

ENGLISH

Drill Book



REVISED ENRICHED EDITION 2020-21

Authors

A. AROCKIA DOSS, M.A.(Eng), M.A. (His), B.Ed.,
Lecturer in English, Puducherry.

G. GEOFFREY DAVIDSON
Salem.

A. GOPAL, M.A., M.Ed., M.Phil.,
Mettur, Salem.

T.S. RAAM KAPIL, M.A., M.Phil., B.Ed.,
PG Asst. in English, Salem.

A. JOSEPHRAJ, M.A., B.Ed.,
Tirunelveli.

V. REUBAN XAVIER M.A., M.Phil.,
Asst. Prof. in English, Tuticorin.

SURYA PUBLICATIONS®

(A unit of Shyamala Group)

Corporate Office:

No. 1, Sugar Mill Colony,
Salai Kumaran illam, Madurai Road,
Tirunelveli - 627 001.

Phone : 0462 - 2338899, 2338484
Mobile : 94431-58484, 95978-39822
E-mail : suryaguides@yahoo.com

Registered Office:

New No. 59, 4th Avenue,
Opp. to Govt. Boys Hr. Sec. School,
Ashok Nagar, Chennai - 600 083.

Ph : 044 - 24744484
Mobile: 94421-58484, 94425-58484
E-mail: srigangapublications5@gmail.com

website : www.suryapublications.in

FREE

Please Send Your Study Materials to our Email Id: padasalai.net@gmail.com

Published By

B. ARUMUGAM

© SURYA PUBLICATIONS

(A unit of Shyamala Group)

First Edition : Apr. 2019
Second Edition : Jun. 2019
Third Edition : July 2019
Fourth Edition : Jan. 2020
Fifth Revised Edition : July 2020

OUR BANK DETAILS

TIRUNELVELI ACCOUNT

Account Name : **SURYA PUBLICATIONS**
Account Number : **446971431**
Bank Name : **INDIAN BANK**
IFSC Code : **IDIB000T034**
Branch Name : **TIRUNELVELI JUNCTION**

Account Name : **SURYA PUBLICATIONS**
Account Number : **510909010051752**
Bank Name : **CITY UNION BANK**
IFSC Code : **CIUB0000230**
Branch Name : **PALAYAMKOTTAI**

CHENNAI ACCOUNT

Account Name : **SRI GANGA PUBLICATION**
Account Number : **928507483**
Bank Name : **INDIAN BANK**
IFSC Code : **IDIB000A031**
Branch Name : **ASHOK NAGAR**

Account Name : **SRI GANGA PUBLICATION**
Account Number : **512020010022514**
Bank Name : **CITY UNION BANK**
IFSC Code : **CIUB0000230**
Branch Name : **PALAYAMKOTTAI**

Drill BOOK**12****CONTENTS**

S.No.	PART I - (20×1 = 20 Marks)	Page No.
1.	SYNONYMS	1
2.	ANTONYMS	5
3.	SINGULAR & PLURAL	8
4.	IDIOMS	12
5.	PREPOSITIONS	18
6.	AMERICAN/BRITISH ENGLISH	26
7.	COMPOUND WORDS	29
8.	ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS	33
9.	QUESTION TAGS	39
10.	SENTENCE PATTERNS	43
11.	RELATIVE PRONOUNS	47
12.	PREFIXES AND SUFFIXES	50
13.	SYLLABIFICATION	54
14.	CLIPPED WORDS	58
15.	FOREIGN WORDS	60
16.	BLENDED WORDS	63
17.	DEFINITION OF WORDS	66
18.	POLITE ALTERNATIVES	71
19.	PHRASAL VERBS	76
PART II - (7×2 = 14 Marks)		
1.	REPORT THE DIALOGUE	80
2.	ACTIVE AND PASSIVE VOICE	86
3.	CONDITIONAL CLAUSES	90
4.	INVERSION OF CONDITIONAL CLAUSES	94
5.	SIMPLE, COMPOUND, COMPLEX SENTENCES	95
6.	DEGREES OF COMPARISON	103

PART III - (7×3 = 21 Marks)		
1.	NON-VERBAL PRESENTATION	106
2.	PROCESS WRITING	111
3.	DIALOGUE WRITING	114
4.	PROVERBS	117
5.	EXPANSION OF HEADLINES	121
6.	CHECK LIST	122
7.	NOTICE WRITING	123
PART IV - (7×5 = 35 Marks)		
1.	NOTE MAKING AND SUMMARY WRITING	126
2.	LETTER WRITING	132
3.	PARAGRAPH WRITING	140
4.	SEMANTIC FIELDS	148
5.	PARAGRAPH TOPICS	151
6.	SPOT THE ERROR	152
7.	HOMOPHONES	164
8.	MODAL VERBS	170
9.	SEMI-MODAL OR QUASI MODAL	172
10.	TENSES	176
11.	DEVELOPING THE HINTS	180
13.	PROSE COMPREHENSION	181
14.	POEM COMPREHENSION	189
	GOVT. QUESTION PAPER - MARCH 2020	192

PART - I

1. SYNONYMS

Mark : 1

Exercise with Answer

Choose the correct synonyms for the underlined words from the options given.

Set I

- Jacopo who barely came up to the door handle of the car, was nearly 12.
a) surely b) happily c) hardly d) sadly
- but at least four others are acutely controversial.
a) lowly b) humbly c) poorly d) highly
- Suddenly, I realised that these two children had given me a profound lesson in getting on with the business of living.
a) severe b) immediate c) great d) negative

Set II

- Over our down clothing we donned our windproof.
a) removed b) threw away c) showed d) put on
- Just as we thought our chuckles had subsided.
a) diminished b) increased c) completed d) submerged
- the liberty of everybody must be curtailed.
a) increased b) soared c) reduced d) improved

Set III

- then the end of such liberty would be universal chaos.
a) normalcy b) confusion c) noisy d) dozy
- Anna would say with an impudent smile.
a) innocent b) fake c) disrespect d) decent
- Our first partly-full bottle of oxygen was now exhausted.
a) filled b) strong c) drained d) thrown

Set IV

- He had returned to the hospital because he had a malignant tumour on the bone.
a) benign b) kind c) clear d) wicked
- Here are my eleven rules, every one of which I regard as golden.
a) important b) many c) few d) internal
- I felt I could not bear to intrude upon this happy family party.
a) inform b) include c) exclude d) interfere

Set V

- wearing a pretty lace jacket, was listening to their chatter, her eyes soft and tender
a) face b) talk c) shouting d) laughter
- The driver steered by scraping his foot on the floor.
a) rubbing b) walking c) asking d) smiling
- I took a firm stance on the ledge.
a) eagerness b) position c) decision d) determination

Answers							
Set I	1. c	2. d	3. c	Set IV	1. d	2. a	3. d
Set II	1. d	2. a	3. c	Set V	1. b	2. a	3. c
Set III	1. b	2. c	3. c				

Self - Evaluation

Choose the correct synonyms for the underlined words from the options given.

Set I

- He shrugged his shoulders to convey his disapproval of their shabby appearance.
a) control b) wish c) improve d) express Ans:
- the best manner of making it is the subject of violent disputes.
a) calm b) ferocious c) playful d) cool Ans:
- My gloomy thoughts probably stem from an accident I had few years ago.
a) happy b) strong c) weak d) sorrowful Ans:

Set II

- They still contained several litres of oxygen – enough to get down to the South Col if used sparingly.
a) in plenty b) carelessly c) cautiously d) happily Ans:
- If you did not place the weight exactly above the legs, it would topple over.
a) truly b) around c) accurately d) supportively Ans:
- You have liberty to laugh at me, but I have liberty to be indifferent to you.
a) different b) concerned c) unconcerned d) disinterested Ans:

Set III

- Liberty is not a personal affair only, but a social contact.
a) submission b) commitment c) derailment d) commission Ans:
- When he expounded on the neem tree, Appa looked at him round-eyed astonishment.
a) asked b) laughed c) shouted d) explained Ans:

3. We persisted in our efforts to beat a trail up it.

a) continued

b) suppressed

c) released

d) gave

Ans:

Set IV

1. I had eleven broken ribs and perforated lung.

a) weak

b) strong

c) sticky

d) punctured

Ans:

2. ----- but at least four others are acutely controversial.

a) debatable

b) accepted

c) believed

d) known

Ans:

3. Yet, gazing at the two little figures, we felt ourselves strangely attracted.

a) striking

b) kicking

c) shouting

d) staring

Ans:

Set V

1. My interest was again provoked by their remarkable demeanour.

a) pulled back

b) incited

c) excited

d) reduced

Ans:

2. China tea has virtues which are not to be despised nowadays.

a) loved

b) liked

c) disposed

d) hated

Ans:

3. Suffering ennobles you – makes you a better person.

a) decreases

b) improves

c) reduces

d) weakens

Ans:

Set VI

1. Scrambling on the rocks and cutting hand holes on the snow, we were able to shuffle past these difficult portions.

a) walking

b) talking

c) climbing

d) pushing

Ans:

2. Our father rejected it saying that it would not be sturdy.

a) accepted

b) informed

c) gathered

d) refused

Ans:

3. There are a lot of people in the world, and I have to accommodate my liberty.

a) unsuit

b) unfit

c) fit in

d) irrelevant

Ans:

Set VII

1. ----- can do what we choose be wise or ridiculous, harsh or easy, conventional or odd.

a) abnormal

b) normal

c) traditional

d) cultural

Ans:

2. Me, my brother and my littlest sister couldn't contain our giggles.

a) write

b) see

c) control

d) pass

Ans:

3. ----- then we chipped steps up the last steep slopes.

a) closed

b) cut

c) opened

d) spoilt

Ans:

Set VIII

1. One boy had on a worn jersey and cut-off khaki pants.

a) damaged b) new c) fresh d) sticky Ans:

2. Actually one can swallow tea-leaves in considerable quantities.

a) constant b) small c) gloomy d) significant Ans:

3. I experienced not only agony and fear but also fear.

a) pain b) insult c) abuse d) slur Ans:

Set IX

1. I sank the spikes of my crampons deep into the frozen snow behind me and levered myself off the ground.

a) lifted b) used c) sent d) walked Ans:

2. It measured a mere three-fourth foot to churn curd.

a) pull b) taste c) give d) stir Ans:

3. We have a whole kingdom in which we rule alone, can do what we choose, be wise or ridiculous.

a) clever b) foolish c) insane d) demon Ans:

Set X

1. ----- can do what we choose be wise or ridiculous, harsh r easy, conventional or odd.

a) strange b) similar c) stately d) orderly Ans:

2. My father called a worker, dispatched him to the carpenter's village.

a) wrote b) asked c) sent d) shouted Ans:

3. Taking advantages of all the forces of knee, shoulder and arm I could muster -----

a) ask b) give c) gather d) push Ans:

PART - I

2. ANTONYMS

Mark : 1

Exercise with Answer

Choose the correct antonyms for the underlined words from the options given.

Set I

- He shrugged his shoulders to convey his disapproval of their shabby appearance.
a) dirty b) neat c) tattered d) ragged
- This is curious because tea is one of the main stays of civilization.
a) indifferent b) important c) strong d) intention
- Nor can we appreciate warmth if we have never suffered cold.
a) escalate b) praise c) criticise d) request

Set II

- I then realised that the ridge ahead, instead of rising, dropped sharply.
a) gradually b) immediately c) soon d) fixedly
- Our father rejected it saying it wouldn't be sturdy.
a) accepted b) refused c) informed d) banned
- After several hundred feet, we came to a hollow.
a) barren b) fertile c) raised d) hole

Set III

- And then the governor himself had praised him.
a) appreciated b) rejected c) refused d) cursed
- A pleasant-looking woman with steel-rimmed spectacles appeared.
a) good b) beautiful c) ugly d) sad
- The best manner of making it is the subject of violent disputes.
a) conflict b) agreement c) brawl d) fight

Set IV

- It opened my eyes to the fact that I was missing something -----
a) fiction b) reality c) spot d) true
- And if I have a fancy of dyeing my hair, or waxing my moustache.
a) fantasy b) modern c) desire d) dislike
- After a while, we'll begin to even detest them.
a) hate b) loath c) love d) refuse

Set V

- One boy had on a worn jersey and cut-off khaki pants.
a) old b) new c) shabby d) tatty
- I experienced not only agony and fear but also anger.
a) pain b) fortitude c) comfort d) insult
- it was turning more into grim struggle.
a) terrible b) cheerful c) barren d) fertile

Answers							
Set I	1. a	2. a	3. c	Set IV	1. a	2. d	3. c
Set II	1. a	2. a	3. c	Set V	1. b	2. c	3. b
Set III	1. d	2. c	3. b				

Self - Evaluation

Choose the correct antonyms for the underlined words from the options given.

Set I

- with their brown skins, tangled hair and dark earnest eyes, we felt ourselves strangely attracted.
a) straight b) twisted c) curled d) jumbled Ans:
- China tea has virtues which are not to be despised nowadays.
a) merits b) qualities c) internal d) vice Ans:
- Suffering seems to be cruelly prevalent in the world today.
a) rare b) common c) presence d) widespread Ans:

Set II

- We crawled out of that tent into the snow, hoisted our 30 lb. of oxygen gear.
a) raised b) lowered c) threw d) kept away Ans:
- One wretched thing about this stool -----
a) worthless b) inferior c) fine d) vile Ans:
- to the great confusion of the traffic and with no small peril to herself.
a) safety b) measure c) danger d) pearl Ans:

Set III

- Individual liberty would have become social anarchy.
a) lawfulness b) legally c) rebellion d) peace Ans:
- Just as we thought our chuckles had subsided.
a) decreased b) diminished c) abated d) increased Ans:

3. They still contained several litres of oxygen – enough to get down to the South Col if used sparingly.

a) cautiously

b) carefully

c) carelessly

d) daily

Ans: **Set IV**

1. In those days they didn't have sophisticated heart surgery.

a) mild

b) strong

c) complicated

d) primitive

Ans:

2. China tea has virtues which are not to be despised nowadays.

a) liked

b) hated

c) reviled

d) known

Ans:

3. ----- with their brown skins, tangled hair and dark earnest eyes, we felt ourselves strangely attracted.

a) serious

b) solemn

c) grave

d) frivolous

Ans: **Set V**

1. ----- with their brown skins, tangled hair and dark earnest eyes, we felt ourselves strangely attracted.

a) oddly

b) peculiarly

c) commonly

d) happily

Ans:

2. Curiously enough a pewter teapot (a rarity nowadays) is not so bad)

a) unique

b) unequal

c) common

d) unknown

Ans:

3. We persisted in our efforts to beat a trail up it.

a) stopped

b) continued

c) persistent

d) sustained

Ans: **Set VI**

1. And very soon this trolley was commandeered by an intrepid crew of two -----

a) fearful

b) strange

c) known

d) fearless

Ans:

2. He would retort instantly, "Why don't you it and see?"

a) gradually

b) immediately

c) quickly

d) finely

Ans:

3. You may, being in a hurry, and seeing your car pulled up by his insolence office -----

a) softness

b) kindness

c) rudeness

d) politeness

Ans: **Set VII**

1. We have a whole kingdom in which we rule alone, can do what we choose, be wise or ridiculous.

a) appreciable

b) wise

c) foolish

d) laughable

Ans:

2. The whole family persuaded him to sit on the chair.

a) followed

b) dissuaded

c) cunningly

d) slowly

Ans:

3. We made frequent changes in lead.

a) regular

b) steady

c) fixed

d) seldom

Ans:

Set VIII

1. He suffered severe third-degree burns on the upper part of his body.
a) serious b) extreme c) mild d) great Ans:
2. There is also the mysterious social etiquette surrounding the teapot.
a) clear b) wonderful c) gloomy d) secretive Ans:
3. One day we came upon them in the windy and deserted square.
a) uninhabited b) lonely c) inhabited d) neat Ans:

Set IX

1. I could scarcely believe my eyes.
a) sufficiently b) barely c) hardly d) narrowly Ans:
2. At least four others are acutely controversial.
a) proactive b) debatable c) certain d) uncertain Ans:
3. Nor can we appreciate warmth if we have never suffered cold.
a) escalate b) praise c) criticise d) request Ans:

Set X

1. ----- all encrusted with all icicles – that concealed his face, there was not disguising his grin of delight.
a) covered b) surrounded c) opened d) hit Ans:
2. ----- curved back legs, yawning languorously to match the recline of the chair.
a) industriously b) lazily c) lethargically d) quickly Ans:
3. Besides, we thought that our uncle was the stingiest person in the village.
a) meanest b) generous c) miserly d) strong Ans:

PART - I**3. SINGULAR & PLURAL****Mark : 1****Plural forms**

- ◇ Most singular nouns are made plural by simply putting an -s at the end.
- ◇ There are many different rules regarding pluralization depending on what letter a noun ends in.
- ◇ Irregular nouns do not follow plural noun rules, so they must be memorized or looked up in the dictionary.

Plural Noun Rules

- ◇ There are many plural noun rules, and because we use nouns so frequently when writing, it's important to know all of them!
- ◇ The correct spelling of plurals usually depends on what letter the singular noun ends in.

GET GRAMMARLY

- ◇ To make regular nouns plural, add *s* to the end.
 - cat – cats
 - house – houses
- ◇ If the singular noun ends in *s*, *-ss*, *-sh*, *-ch*, *-x*, or *-z*, add *es* to the end to make it plural.
 - truss – trusses
 - lunch – lunches
 - bus – buses
 - tax – taxes
 - marsh – marshes
 - blitz – blitzes
- ◇ In some cases, singular nouns ending in *-s* or *-z*, require that you double the *-s* or *-z* prior to adding the *-es* for pluralization.
 - fez – fezzes
 - gas – gasses
- ◇ If the noun ends with *f* or *fe*, the *f* is often changed to *ve* before adding the *-s* to form the plural version.
 - wife – wives
 - wolf – wolves

Exceptions:

- roof – roofs
 - chef – chefs
 - belief – beliefs
 - chief – chiefs
- ◇ If a singular noun ends in *y* and the letter before the *-y* is a consonant, change the ending to *ies* to make the noun plural.
 - city – cities
 - puppy – puppies
 - ◇ If the singular noun ends in *-y* and the letter before the *-y* is a vowel, simply add an *-s* to make it plural.
 - ray – rays
 - boy – boys
 - ◇ If the singular noun ends in *o*, add *es* to make it plural.
 - potato – potatoes
 - tomato – tomatoes

Exceptions:

- photo – photos
 - piano – pianos
 - halo – halos
- ◇ With the unique word *volcano*, you can apply the standard pluralization for words that end in *-o* or not. It's your choice! Both of the following are correct:
 - volcanoes
 - volcanos
 - ◇ If the singular noun ends in *us*, the plural ending is frequently *i*.
 - cactus – cacti
 - focus – foci
 - ◇ If the singular noun ends in *is*, the plural ending is *es*.
 - analysis – analyses
 - ellipsis – ellipses
 - ◇ If the singular noun ends in *on*, the plural ending is *a*.
 - phenomenon – phenomena
 - criterion – criteria
 - ◇ Some nouns don't change at all when they're pluralized.
 - sheep – sheep
 - series – series
 - species – species
 - deer – deer

- ◇ You need to see these nouns in context to identify them as singular or plural. Consider the following sentence:

- Mark caught one fish, but I caught three fish.

Plural Noun Rules for Irregular Nouns

- ◇ Irregular nouns follow no specific rules, so it's best to memorize these or look up the proper pluralization in the dictionary.

- | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| • child – children | • tooth – teeth |
| • goose – geese | • foot – feet |
| • man – men | • mouse – mice |
| • woman – women | • person – people |

Irregular Nouns Singular Plural

-s/-z/-x/-sh/-ch: add -es	variations on add -en	-oo to -ee	-ouse to -ice
glass – glasses box – boxes bush – bushes watch – watches switch – switches	woman – women man – men child – children ox – oxen	foot – feet tooth – teeth goose – geese	mouse – mice louse – lice
some -o: add -es	-oo: add -s	consonant + y: -y to -i and add -es	-f/-fe: -f to -v and add -es
potato – potatoes tomato – tomatoes hero – heroes echo – echoes volcano – volcanoes veto – vetoes torpedo – torpedoes	zoo – zoos kangaroo – kangaroos tattoo – tattoos	baby – babies penny – pennies spy – spies poppy – poppies	life – lives wolf – wolves shelf – shelves wife – wives calf – calves half – halves dwarf – dwarves knife – knives thief – thieves scarf – scarves loaf – loaves hoof – hooves leaf – leaves elf – elves self – selves
-us to -i	-is to -es	-on to -a	
cactus – cacti fungus – fungi octopus – octopi focus – foci stimulus – stimuli alumnus – alumni nucleus – nuclei syllabus – syllabi	oasis – oases crisis – crises basis – bases synopsis – synopses synthesis – syntheses parenthesis – parentheses ellipsis – ellipses thesis – theses axis – axes analysis – analyses diagnosis – diagnoses hypothesis – hypotheses	phenomenon – phenomena criterion – criteria	

-um to -a	-a: add -e	No change	Nouns that have no singular
bacterium – bacteria medium – media memorandum – memoranda datum – data curriculum – curricula addendum – addenda	larva – larvae antenna – antennae formula – formulae alga – algae vertebra – vertebrae	sheep – sheep deer – deer fish – fish moose – moose trout – trout cod – cod offspring – offspring series – series species – species	glasses shorts scissors pants jeans binoculars

Exercise with Answer

Choose the correct plural of the given word.

- | | | | | |
|----------------|------------------|----------------|------------------|------------------|
| 1. loaf | a) loafse | b) loaf | c) loaves | d) loaives |
| 2. nationality | a) nationalities | b) nationality | c) nationalithys | d) nationalities |
| 3. sheep | a) sheeps | b) sheep | c) sheepes | d) sheepves |
| 4. family | a) family | b) familys | c) families | d) families |
| 5. potato | a) potatoes | b) potatos | c) potato | d) potatoves |
| 6. sandwich | a) sandwichs | b) sandwiches | c) sandwich | d) sandwichves |
| 7. mouse | a) mouse | b) mouses | c) mouss | d) mice |
| 8. language | a) language | b) languagees | c) languages | d) languagies |
| 9. tomato | a) tomatoes | b) tomatos | c) tomato | d) tomatoies |
| 10. photo | a) photoes | b) photos | c) photo | d) photoies |
| 11. thesis | a) thesises | b) thesies | c) thesi | d) theses |
| 12. stimulus | a) stimuli | b) stimuluse | c) stmula | d) stumele |
| 13. deer | a) deers | b) deeres | c) deer | d) door |
| 14. bus | a) buss | b) buses | c) busi | d) busies |
| 15. phenomenon | a) phenomenons | b) phnomenoni | c) phenomenon | d) phenomena |

Answers

1. c	2. a	3. b	4. d	5. a	6. b	7. d	8. c	9. a	10. b	11. d	12. a	13. c	14. b	15. d
------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------

Self - Evaluation

Choose the correct plural of the given word.

- | | | | | |
|------------|-------------|--------------|------------|---------------|
| 1. shelf | a) shelves | b) shelves | c) shelvs | d) shelvies |
| 2. buffalo | a) buffalos | b) buffaloes | c) buffalo | d) buffaloves |
| 3. goose | a) geese | b) goose | c) goosi | d) goosu |
| 4. louse | a) lousi | b) lousei | c) lousu | d) lice |

5. species	a) specieses	b) species	c) speciese	d) speciesi
6. aircraft	a) aircraftes	b) sirscraft	c) aircraft	d) aircrafti
7. analysis	a) analyses	b) analysis	c) analysiss	d) analyseses
8. appendix	a) appendix	b) appendices	c) appendixi	d) appendixu
9. cactus	a) catuss	b) cacte	c) cactus	d) cacti
10. medium	a) mediumes	b) mediem	c) media	d) medium
11. criterion	a) criteria	b) criteriones	c) criterioe	d) criteries
12. wolf	a) wolf	b) wolfes	c) wolves	d) wolfis
13. alga	a) algae	b) algai	c) algaum	d) alga
14. basis	a) bases	b) basises	c) basis	d) base
15. antenna	a) antenna	b) antannas	c) antennes	d) antennae

PART - I**4. IDIOMS****Mark : 1**

- ◇ Idioms exist in every language. They are words or phrases that aren't meant to be taken literally.
- ◇ For example, if you say someone has "cold feet," it doesn't mean their toes are actually cold. Rather, it means they're nervous about something. Idioms can't be deduced merely by studying the words.

Some common idioms

1. **add insult to injury – make matters worse by annoying**
The manager refused to raise the salary; to add insult to injury he increased the time of work.
2. **lead to altar – marry someone especially in a church**
Joseph led Mary to altar.
3. **the apple of one's eye – affectionate person**
His daughter was the apple of his eye.
4. **tied to one's wife's/mother's apron – controlled by his wife or mother.**
Kannan is tied to his wife's apron.
5. **break of the back of – give work more than one can do.**
Owners should not break the back of the domestic workers.
6. **save one's bacon – escape with difficulty**
The company saved its bacon by borrowing money from the bank.
7. **keep one's balance – remain steady**
We should keep our balance in the time of difficulties.
8. **hang in balance – uncertain**
The success of his new business is hanging in balance.
9. **keep the ball rolling – continue the work**
For the success of the Sports Day the PT master kept the ball rolling.

10. **the ball is in your court – now the decision is yours**
The ball is in your court so take a decision regarding the opening of the shop.
11. **his bark is worse than the bites – words are worse than the deeds**
She talks too much; her bark is worse than the bites.
12. **spill the bean – tell a secret.**
She spilt the bean and it created the problem.
13. **beat about a bush – not directly coming to the point**
Don't beat about the bush, come straight to the point.
14. **flog a dead horse – pursue an argument when it is over**
The matter is over; don't flog the dead horse.
15. **out of one's beat – different from usual activities**
No one knows why is he is out of beat today.
16. **off the beaten track – not well known**
She wants to select a job which is off the beaten track.
17. **bed of nails – uncomfortable**
The life of the business man is a bed of nails.
18. **bed of roses – comfortable and easy life**
Everybody wants his life to be a bed of roses.
19. **behind the screen – responsible but not known outside**
Teachers are always behind the screen at the school functions.
20. **kill two birds with one stone – get two results in one action**
By sending out the clerk the manager kills two birds with one stone, saves the salary of a clerk and punishes the corrupt worker.
21. **bite more than one can chew – accept more than one can do**
I don't want to accept all the work; I don't want to bite more than I can chew.
22. **blood is thicker than water – relatives closer than friends**
When he was in trouble his brothers helped him; blood is thicker than water.
23. **make one's blood run cold – make someone afraid of something**
The horror movie made his blood run cold.
24. **beard the lion in its den – face the opponent in his own place**
Indian team beat Australia in Australia; they bearded the lion in its den.
25. **a blessing in disguise – good happens out of something bad**
It is a blessing in disguise that we missed the train because it met with an accident on the way.
26. **nip in the bud – stop something at the beginning**
Bad habits should be nipped in the bud.
27. **fool's errand – almost impossible to achieve**
It is a fool's errand to try to get something which is away from our capacity.

28. raining cats and dogs – heavy rain

We could not go out yesterday because it was raining cats and dogs.

29. turn a new leaf – start a new life

The criminal after the advice of the priest turned a new leaf.

30. make a mountain out of molehill – make a small problem into big

It is not a big problem; don't make a mountain out of molehill.

31. let the grass grow under one's feet – take too much time

Complete your work in time. Don't let the grass grow under your feet.

32. under the sun – in the whole world

Our principal is a nice gentle man; we cannot find another one like him under the sun.

33. move heaven and earth – do everything possible

He moved heaven and earth to start his business.

34. in deep waters – in great trouble

As he was careless in the beginning now he is in deep waters.

35. thank one's lucky stars – lucky enough to achieve something

She thanked her lucky stars because she got the first mark in the district.

36. cake's not worth a candle – after a great effort getting a poor result

He has put a lot of effort but cake's not worth the candle. The result is not that great.

37. call spade a spade – tell the reality

He calls spade a spade without minding to whom he speaks.

38. call on the carpet – call someone to punish

His superiors were angry with him because of his behaviour so he was called on the carpet.

39. cast a long shadow – can influence people

He achieved many things with the help of the politicians because he could cast a long shadow.

40. sacred cow – beyond people's criticism

Many religious people are kept as sacred cow; no one criticises them.

Textual Exercises

Given below are some idiomatic expressions with their meanings. Understand the meaning.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| a) wait for the dust to settle | - to wait for a situation to become clear or certain |
| b) get/have all your ducks in a row | - to have made all the preparations needed to do something / to be well organized |
| c) fetch and carry (for somebody) | - to do a lot of little jobs for somebody as if you were their servant |
| d) do the math | - to think carefully about something before doing it, so that you know all the relevant facts or figures |
| e) round the corner | - very near |

Fill in the blanks with the right idioms. Choose from the above given idioms.

- The Sherpas are cheerful, gallant men, who fetch and carry tents, oxygen, food etc., for climbers during their ascent of the summit.
- The team does the math carefully so as to reach the summit successfully.
- When they had to climb through deep new snow the party sometimes had to wait for the dust to settle.
- Each member of the team had all their responsibility to get all their ducks in a row.
- We could not believe that with a few more whacks of the ice axe in the firm snow we were round the corner to the top.

Understand the meaning of the given idiomatic expression and choose the right one to complete the sentence.

the icing on the cake – something extra and not essential, but is added to make it even better

break the ice – to make people more relaxed, especially at the beginning of the meeting

- The conference room was silent though packed. The chairman introduced an interactive session to break the ice.
- Our headmistress not only promised us to take us for an excursion, but also announced that on return we would get a holiday. It was like the icing on the cake.

Exercise with Answer

Choose the meaning of the idiom found in the following sentence.

- You all look great and you will do well, Break a leg!**
 - Be careful
 - good luck
 - take care of your leg
 - look good
- The situation is out of hand.**
 - out of control
 - out in the hand
 - handful
 - weak hand
- As we failed in the attempt we went back to the drawing board.**
 - tried with the drawing board
 - had a good drawing board
 - started again from the beginning
 - stopped with the drawing board
- Come to the point directly; don't beat around the bush.**
 - don't take a roundabout way to my house
 - the way is full of bush
 - it is a difficulty way
 - say what you mean directly.
- I will not cut corners to save money; I stand of quality.**
 - doing something poorly
 - ask for less money
 - spoiling the shape of something
 - doing things indirectly
- She wanted to hit the sack.**
 - hit powerfully
 - drink water
 - argue forcefully
 - go to sleep

7. **I you don't appoint the right person now you will miss the boat.**
 a) you will not travel anywhere b) it will be too late
 c) you will suffer a lot d) you cannot avoid failure
8. **They tried to pull the leg of the new student.**
 a) push him down b) pull his leg so that he will fall
 c) make fun of him d) complain to the teacher
9. **As he was under the weather he could not attend the class.**
 a) feeling sick b) under pressure c) away from home d) attended a party
10. **The teacher tried to break the ice.**
 a) explain well b) understand c) be rude d) make them comfortable

Answers									
1. b	2. a	3. c	4. d	5. a	6. d	7. b	8. c	9. a	10. d

Self - Evaluation

Choose the meaning of the idiom found in the following sentence.

1. **He lost his job; it was a blessing in disguise.**
 a) blessing from heaven b) God's will
 c) a good thing that seems bad at first d) a bad thing that seems good at first Ans :
2. **As we could not reach our desired end we called it a day.**
 a) stopped working b) was a bad day
 c) waited for a good day d) named it for another day Ans :
3. **This is the time for you to get your work together.**
 a) gather all your strength b) work better or leave
 c) so far good work d) appreciable work Ans :
4. **When he was in tension he pulled himself together.**
 a) shouted at others b) called others
 c) gathered his strength d) calmed down Ans :
5. **'He asked his parents' help; that was his last straw.**
 a) patience ran out b) end of the project
 c) waiting for the next chance d) getting his strength back Ans :
6. **It was the perfect storm in their life.**
 a) turning point b) worst situation
 c) chance for improvement d) next chance Ans :
7. **A word from his wife added insult to the injury.**
 a) helped him to come out of the trouble b) pleasant to his mind
 c) made the situation worse d) pulled him together Ans :

- [illegible]

PART - I**5. PREPOSITIONS****Mark : 1**

- ◇ A preposition is a word used to link nouns, pronouns, or phrases to other words within a sentence. They act to connect the people, objects, time and locations of a sentence.
- ◇ Prepositions are usually short words, and they are normally placed directly in front of nouns.

What are prepositions?

- ◇ The words like, “in, at, on, during, for, by, to, of, out, with, up, from, through” “about, above, across, among, around, before, behind, between, beyond” e t c. are called prepositions.

Where to use preposition?

- ◇ It is used before a noun.
- ◇ It is pre-position to a noun or pronoun.
- ◇ Nouns in some places do not take preposition. For Examples:
 - He broke the window.
 - The bus is moving.
 - He jumped.
 - The teacher asked a question.
 - The boy ran.

Examples with prepositions

- He broke the window at 8 o' clock.
- He jumped over the wall.
- The bus is moving to the bus stand.
- He walked across the road.
- The boy ran to school.

Use of Preposition

The expression of time: at, on, in, during, for, by, after, before.

at

- ◇ 'at' is used for a point of time. It is used with clock time, noon and night
 - The lion moved at night.
 - The school starts at 8.30 a.m.
 - She came at noon.
 - See me at 6 a.m.
 - The ship reaches here at midnight.
- ◇ at dawn, at sunset, at dusk, at the end of the concert, at the beginning of the lesson.
- ◇ 'at' may be used for festival seasons.
 - We have holiday at Deepavali.-
 - at Christmas.
 - at Ramzon.

'on'

- ◇ 'on' is used for a specific day or date.
 - I shall come on Friday.
 - Christians go to church on Sundays.
 - She was born on July 4th.
- ◇ 'on' is used for a part of specific day.
 - He met me on the night of March 10th.
 - We have pooja on Deepavalli morning.
 - He came to me on the noon of Friday.
 - We go to church on Christmas morning.

'in'

- ◇ 'in' is used for period of time.
- ◇ in summer, in April, in 1999, in the morning, in the evening.
 - He was born in 1977.
 - Cricket is played in summer.
 - We go to school in the morning.
 - She met me in April.
- ◇ 'in' is also used to mention a period at the end of which something will happen.
 - We shall be ready in a few minutes.
 - I will finish this work in two hours.
 - 'in' is also used for the length of time taken for the completion of some activity.
 - This train takes you from Salem to Chennai in 6 hours.
 - He ran the distance in 3 minutes.

'during'

- ◇ 'during' is used for an occurrence or situation that continues throughout a specific period.
 - During the war food was rationed.
 - We work during the day.
 - Don't disturb me during the study time.
 - I shall visit Chennai during my summer holidays.
 - People lived happily during the rule of Ashoka.

'by'

- ◇ 'by' is used to denote the latest time by which something was or is to be done.
- ◇ It may be done before but not after.
 - We should go to school by 8.a.m.
 - You should finish the work by the end of the week.
 - In some situation 'by' is used in the place of 'during'.
 - Some people like to travel by night.
 - The sun will affect you by day.

'for'

- ◇ 'for' is used to denote period of time.
 - 'It rained for two hours.
 - I have not seen her for a month
 - We waited for one hour.

Some expressions.

- ◇ at 3 o'clock, in May, on Sunday, at noon, in summer, on Tuesday, at dinnertime, in 1999, on 6 March, at bedtime, in the next century, on my birthday, at sunset, in the past, on Depavali day, at the moment, in the summer, on the Independence day,
 - I have a meeting at 9 a.m. The shop closes at midnight.
 - Gita went home at lunchtime. It often snows in December.
 - We may go to Jupiter in the future.
 - There should be lot of progress in the next century.
 - Do you work on Sundays?

Preposition for Place, Countries, towns etc.

- ◇ When the reference is general and no specific place is named use 'in'.
 - I like to spend the summer in the village.
 - Many people live in cities.
- ◇ For the names of the countries, continents and large land masses such as state, capital cities, names of large towns use in.
- ◇ For village and smaller towns use at.
 - We lived in Chennai.
 - My sister lives in Australia.
 - The Japanese live in Japan.
 - He was born at Ammapet.
 - He works at Nagercoil.

Places of residence. (house etc.)

- ◇ When any residence is mentioned generally use 'in'.
 - She wanted to live in a bungalow.
 - In a cottage,
 - in a flat, in a mansion, in a house, in a hotel.
- ◇ For a particular house use 'at'.
 - He lives at that flat.
 - She lives at her sister's house.
 - We stayed at the Savoy Hotel.

Places of work

- ◇ if it is a building, use 'in'.
 - My father works in a bank.
 - She works in an office.
 - in a shop, in a factory, in a school.

- ◇ If it is not a building, use 'on'.
 - on a farm, on the railway, on an estate, on a rubber plantation.
- ◇ Another way of using at/in/on/ for place.
 - 'at' for a point, 'in' for an enclosed space, 'on' for a surface

Some usage

at the corner,	in the garden,	on the surface,
at the bus stop,	in Chennai,	on the ceiling,
at the door,	at the top,	at the end,
at the entrance,	at the crossroads,	in London,
in France,	in a box,	in my pocket,
in my purse,	in a building,	in a car,
on the ceiling,	on the door,	on the cover,
on the floor,	on the carpet,	on the menu

Preposition – for

- He is tall for his age.
- I am speaking for all the workers.
- I'm going away for a few days
- I am anxious for her safety.
- Salem is famous for mangoes.

Preposition – at

- I'll be at home all morning.
- You can see the stars at night.
- The dog rushed at me.
- Come at 2 o' clock.
- She got married at twenty.
- She is good at music.

Preposition – from

- The wind from the north is cold.
- Wine is made from grapes.
- We are on holiday from 8 April
- She is different from others.

Preposition – in

- Mt. Everest is the highest peak in the world.
- Throw it in the fire.
- It will be ready in a week.
- He is sitting in an arm chair.
- In summer Salem is very hot.
- She was born in 1954.

Preposition – on

- I met her on Sunday.
- This book is on philosophy.

Preposition – over

- Spread the cloth over the table.
- He ruled over a great empire.
- He climbed over the wall.
- There is a bridge over the river.
- He heard the news over the radio.
- Over 3 thousand copies have been sold.

Preposition – towards

- The child came running towards me.
- They are always friendly towards strangers.
- The money will go towards building a school.

Preposition – with

- His fingers were numb with cold.
- He is with Air India.
- I live with my parents.
- Cut it with the knife.
- Don't fight with me.
- I'll do it with pleasure.
- Be patient with old people.
- He is the man with a scar.
- I'm with you all the time.

Preposition – under

- The rat was under the table.
- I am under his control.
- She is under 16.
- The building is under repair.

Usage of some prepositions**by, with**

- ◇ 'by' is used with the doer of an action. 'with' is used with the instrument used to perform the action.
 - The bird was killed by the hunter
 - The snake was beaten with a stick.

between, among

- ◇ 'between' is used in regard to two persons or things.
- ◇ 'among' is used in regard to more than two persons or things.
 - The property was divided between the two brothers.
 - Sweets were distributed among the children.

in, into

- ◇ 'In' is used in regard to rest inside, 'into' for motion inside.
 - The milk is in the jug.
 - They are sitting in the room.
 - Pour the milk into the jug.
 - She rushed into the room.

on, upon

- ◇ 'On' is used in regard to rest on a surface, 'upon' involves motion.
 - He sat on a rock.
 - The cat pounced upon the rat.

in, within

- ◇ 'In' denotes at the end of future period; 'within' means before the end of.
 - He will return in a week.
 - He will return within a week.

since, for

- ◇ 'Since' is used with point of time; 'for' with period of time.
 - She has been ill since Monday.
 - She has been ill for three days.

till, by

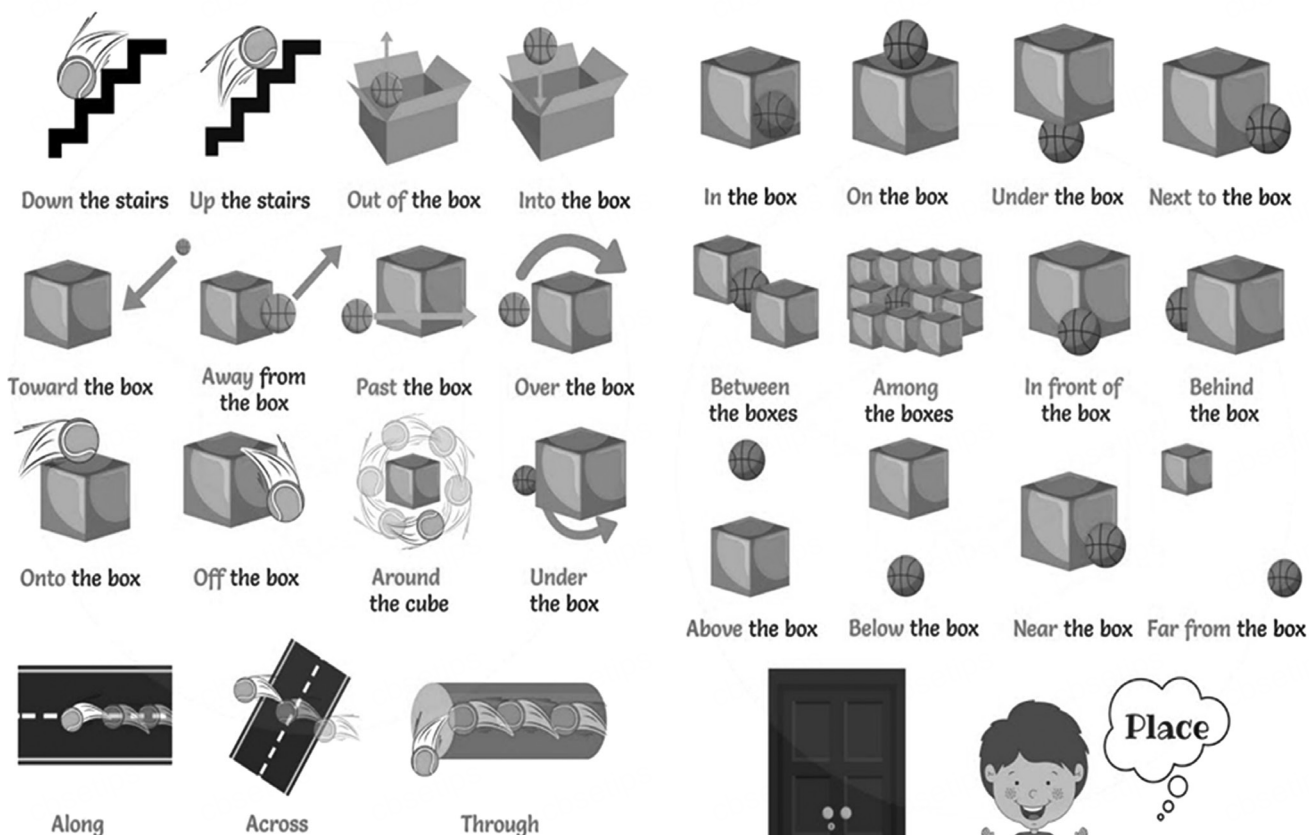
- ◇ 'Till' means up to; 'by' means not later than.
 - I shall stay here till Sunday.
 - I shall leave this place by Monday

made from, made of

- ◇ When one substance is changed into another we use 'from'; when the original material is not actually changed we use 'of'.
 - Flour is made from wheat.
 - Her dress was made of silk.
- ◇ Angry 'with' a person but angry 'at' something he does or says.
 - The father was angry with his son.
 - I was angry at what he said.

Very common mistake in the use of preposition

- You should write in ink. (not with)
- We discussed this matter. (not on)
- She is different from others. (not than)
- He is glad of his success. (not for)
- We are interested in the story. (not with)
- I am pleased with your behavior. (not in)



Textual Exercises

Page 43

Recall your learning of basic prepositions and complete the sentences using the prepositions given in brackets.

(with, since, over, under, on, between, among, near/beside, into, in front of)

- The boy jumped into a narrow stream.
- My brother will meet me on Friday morning.
- A temple is near/beside a bank.
- My friend with his brother will meet me tomorrow.
- There is usually a garden in front of a bungalow.
- Yuvashree has been studying well since childhood.
- A trekker climbed on a mountain meticulously.
- There was a skirmish between my brother and sister.
- The laudable thoughts were apparent among many scholars in a conference.
- It is easy to work under the aegis of visionary leader.

Complete the following passages using prepositions given in brackets.

Page 45

(among, for, at, to, in,)

- When Lakshmi was (1) at school, she was keen (2) to (not a preposition but part of infinitive) learn music and languages. She involved herself (3) in the school orchestra. She was responsible (4) for conducting many programmes. She was very popular (5) among her schoolmates, as she was good friendly and helpful.

(after, with, on, before, of, in, for)

- (1) Before the interview started, Riaz was confident (2) of getting the job. He knew that he was qualified (3) for the job. He was interested (4) in discharging his duty perfectly. The interview panel was impressed (5) with his attitude and skills. So (6) After the interview, he was (7) on cloud nine.

Exercise with Answer

Fill in the blank with suitable preposition.

- He went _____ the market.
a) in b) on c) to d) at
- He lives _____ a big town.
a) in b) on c) to d) at
- I met him _____ the afternoon.
a) on b) in c) at d) with
- He took something _____ the drawer.
a) about b) on c) into d) from
- He put the books _____ the table.
a) in b) on c) at d) from

6. He fell _____ the ladder and broke his leg.
a) in b) at c) from d) of
7. Let us hope _____ the best.
a) for b) in c) from d) on
8. There is someone _____ the door.
a) in b) at c) on d) of
9. There is a mistake _____ the third line.
a) on b) of c) at d) in
10. Soumya is the best girl _____ the class.
a) on b) at c) in d) of
11. Indians celebrate Independence Day _____ the 15th of August.
a) on b) in c) of d) at
12. This table is made _____ wood.
a) on b) from c) in d) of

Answers											
1. c	2. a	3. b	4. d	5. b	6. c	7. a	8. b	9. d	10. c	11. a	12. d

Self - Evaluation

Fill in the blank with suitable preposition.

1. I really care _____ what happens to him.
a) about b) to c) of d) on Ans :
2. I heard that he died _____ heart attack.
a) from b) on c) at d) of Ans :
3. Please apologise to them _____ me.
a) of b) for c) about d) at Ans :
4. I saw a car collide _____ a motorbike.
a) against b) on c) with d) at Ans :
5. I don't agree _____ banning banners in the hall.
a) in b) about c) with d) to Ans :
6. I ran _____ Raja while I was in the library. I haven't seen him for ages.
a) into b) in c) for d) at Ans :
7. I am very satisfied _____ my exam results.
a) in b) for c) with d) at Ans :
8. My teacher has noticed a big improvement _____ my English.
a) at b) in c) on d) for Ans :
9. There's a lack _____ cheap restaurant in this area.
a) of b) in c) on d) at Ans :

10. She has a lot of admiration _____ what you have done.
a) at b) with c) in d) for Ans :
11. She likes listening _____ music.
a) at b) on c) to d) for Ans :
12. We have been waiting _____ the bus for 20 minutes.
a) for b) to c) at d) about Ans :
13. We are going _____ holidays next week
a) in b) for c) on d) with Ans :
14. We live _____ London.
a) at b) on c) in d) for Ans :
15. Would you like to go _____ the cinema tonight?
a) at b) in c) for d) to Ans :
16. No thanks, I was _____ the cinema yesterday.
a) in b) at c) to d) for Ans :
17. There is a bridge _____ the river.
a) across b) about c) from d) at Ans :
18. There are many picture postcards _____ the wall.
a) in b) at c) on d) for Ans :
19. Who is the person waiting _____ the library?
a) on b) at c) to d) in Ans :
20. Come _____ the sitting room. We want to watch TV.
a) into b) to c) in d) on Ans :

PART - I**6. AMERICAN/BRITISH ENGLISH****Mark : 1****British English to American English**

- ◇ Given the number of places around the world that English is spoken, differences are bound to emerge. Despite how much the USA and UK have in common, there are enough differences between their two versions of the English language that someone may not always understand exactly what someone from the other country is saying.
- ◇ Not only are there 160 distinct dialects of the English language, but there's also different spelling and even words, used to describe one or other thing.
- ◇ Fortunately, the US State Department has created a series of these useful graphics to help clear things up between the British English Vs. American English usage.

British English	American English	British English	American English
autumn	fall	angry	mad
biscuit	cookies	brinjal	egg plant
crisps	potato chips	chairman	president
film	movie	chemist	druggist
ground floor	first floor	dust bin	garbage can,/trash can
holiday	vacation	foot ball	soccer
lorry	truck	goods	freight
luggage	baggage	gum	glue
mobile phone	cell phone	jam	jelly
nappy	diaper	mad	crazy
petrol	gasoline	maize	corn
post	mail	notice board	bulletin board
sweets	candy / candies	note	chit
tap	faucet	porridge	oat meal
taxi	cab	queue	line
tin	can	rubbish	garbage / trash
underground	subway	spanner	wrench
railway	railroad	shop	store
lift	elevator	timber	lumber
flat	apartment	time table	schedule
pavement	sidewalk	terminus	depot / terminal
aerial	antenna	torch	flash light
advertisement	commercial		

Exercise with Answer

Write the American English words for the underlined words in the following sentences:

1. Trees shed their leaves during the autumn season.
2. Children like biscuits very much.
3. I like chips.
4. Yesterday we watched a Hindi film.
5. We hired a house at the ground floor of an apartment.
6. I went to my uncle's house during summer holiday.
7. Lorries are used to carry loads.

Choose the American for the given British word.

- | | | | | | |
|-----------------|---|---------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|
| 8. luggage | - | a) bandage | b) mortgage | c) baggage | d) lumbago |
| 9. mobile phone | - | a) cell phone | b) land phone | c) hand phone | d) small phone |
| 10. nappy | - | a) napier | b) happy | c) addition | d) diaper |
| 11. petrol | - | a) oil | b) gasoline | c) mine | d) diesel |
| 12. post | - | a) mail | b) office | c) lings | d) enter |
| 13. sweet | - | a) sugar | b) heartily | c) candy | d) crisp |
| 14. tap | - | a) tube | b) pipe | c) slap | d) faucet |
| 15. taxi | - | a) cab | b) car | c) cabriolet | b) hire |

Answers				
1. fall	2. cookies	3. potato chips	4. movie	5. first floor
6. vocation	7. trucks	8. c) baggage	9. a) cell phone	10. d) diaper
11. b) gasoline	12. a) mail	13. c) candy	14. d) faucet	15. a) cab

Self - Evaluation**Write the American English words for the underlined words in the following sentences:**

- The pavement vendors sell goods at low prices.
- Aerial is used to receive signals clearly.
- The Airtel advertisement is interesting.
- He became angry when I slapped him.
- I like brinjal curry very much.
- He is the chairman of the company.
- My uncle is a chemist.
- The garbage should be put in the dust bin.
- Ronaldo is a popular foot ballplayer.
- Charcoal is sent through goods train.

Choose the American word for the British word.

- | | | | | |
|------------------|----------------|-------------------|----------------|---------------|
| 11. gum | a) paste | b) glue | c) sticky | d) tube |
| 12. jam | a) jelly | b) sticky | c) candy | d) crispy |
| 13. mad | a) angry | b) jump | c) lipsy | d) crazy |
| 14. maize | a) cumin | b) rice | c) corn | d) wheat |
| 15. notice board | a) paper board | b) bulletin board | c) glare board | d) note board |
| 16. note | a) chit | b) send | c) sit | d) paper |
| 17. porridge | a) flow | b) watery | c) oat meal | d) full meal |
| 18. queue | a) straight | b) orderly | c) calm | d) line |
| 19. rubbish | a) luggage | b) trash | c) tin | d) reality |
| 20. timber | a) lumber | b) wood | c) fire wood | d) forest |

PART - I**7. COMPOUND WORDS****Mark : 1****Compound Words**

- ◇ When two words are used together to yield a new meaning, a compound is formed.
- ◇ Compound words can be written in three ways:
 - as open compounds (spelled as two words, eg: ice cream)
 - closed compounds (joined to form a single word, eg: doorknob)
 - hyphenated compounds (two words joined by a hyphen, eg: long-term)
- ◇ Sometimes, more than two words can form a compound (e.g., mother-in-law)
- ◇ The most common spelling writers face is whether to write compounds as separate words, one word, or hyphenated words.

Open Compound Words

- ◇ An open compound word is created in cases when the modifying adjective is used with its noun to create a new noun. This isn't quite the same as a noun with a modifying adjective.
- ◇ We just use a space between the adjective and the noun, so sometimes it can be hard to identify as a compound; however, if the two words are commonly used together, it's considered to be a compound word.
 - eg: living room, full moon, real estate, dinner table, coffee mug.
- ◇ When adverbs ending in -ly combine with another word, the resulting compound is always spelled as two separate words.
 - eg: largely irrelevant, newly formed

Closed Compound Words

- ◇ Closed compound words look like one word.
- ◇ At one point, these words weren't used together, but they're now accepted as a "real word" in the English language.
- ◇ Closed compound words are usually made up of only two words.
 - eg: notebook, superman, waistcoat, bookstore, fireman.
- ◇ The English language is always evolving, and when words become used more frequently, they are often eventually written as one word.
- ◇ When the Internet first began, for example, we talked about going on-line. Now that this is a daily experience for most of us, the spelling online has become commonly accepted.

Hyphenated Compound Words

- ◇ There are a great many grammar rules regarding hyphens in compound words.
- ◇ One important rule of thumb to remember is that in most cases, a compound adjective is hyphenated if placed before the noun it modifies, but not if placed after the noun.
 - eg: a long-term solution, an up-to-date user guide
- ◇ But... This is not a good solution for the long term. This user guide is not up to date.

- ◇ This is just one of many rules concerning hyphens in compound words and it is often necessary to consult the dictionary to determine whether these terms should be hyphenated or not.

Textual Exercises

Here is an example from the lesson: **fibre + tissue – fibrous tissue**

- | | | | |
|----|-----------------------|---|----------------------|
| 1. | muscle + pain | – | muscular pain |
| 2. | skeleton + system | – | skeletal system |
| 3. | nerve + disorder | – | nervous disorder |
| 4. | digestion + enzymes | – | digestive enzymes |
| 5. | surgery + instruments | – | surgical instruments |
| 6. | agony + experience | – | agonizing experience |
| 7. | glory + victory | – | glorious victory |
| 8. | fancy + idea | – | fanciful idea |
| 9. | emotion + song | – | emotional song |

No.	Compound	Examples
1	NOUN + NOUN	postman, newspaper, windmill, school boy, bed sheets, bookshop.
2.	NOUN + VERB	sunrise, sunset, baby sit, rainfall, haircut, head ache
3.	NOUN + ADJECTIVE	lifelong, sky blue, duty free, world famous.
4.	NOUN + GERUND	air conditioning, bookbinding, story telling, eve teasing.
5.	VERB + NOUN	play ground, passport, breakfast, work place, stop watch.
6.	ADJECTIVE + NOUN	fast food, mad rush, blackboard, blue ink, hot water.
7.	PREPOSITION + VERB	overtake, output, income, undergo, upset, input.
8.	GERUND + NOUN	drawing room, dining hall, swimming pool, playing cards, walking sticks, shopping bag.
9.	ADJECTIVE + VERB	clear cut, safeguard, whitewash, black mark.
10.	PREPOSITION + NOUN	uphill, downhill, over coat, inbox.
11.	ADJECTIVE + ADJECTIVE	dark blue, pale yellow, light green.

Exercise with Answer

Choose the correct combination of the given compound word.

- ice fall**
 - adverb + noun
 - noun + adjective
 - noun + verb
 - gerund + noun
- knife edge**
 - noun + noun
 - noun + verb
 - noun + adjective
 - verb + noun

3. **wind-proof**
a) noun + adjective b) adverb + noun c) adjective + noun d) noun + noun
4. **sleeping bags**
a) adverb + noun b) gerund + noun c) adjective + noun d) noun + noun
5. **half-way**
a) adverb + noun b) noun + verb
c) gerund + noun d) preposition + noun
6. **never ending**
a) verb + noun b) noun + verb c) gerund + adverb d) adverb + gerund
7. **parking lot**
a) verb + noun b) adjective + noun c) gerund + noun d) noun + noun
8. **ice axe**
a) noun + verb b) noun + noun c) noun + gerund d) noun + adjective
9. **partly-full**
a) adverb + adjective b) noun + noun c) noun + gerund d) adverb + noun
10. **sun rise**
a) noun + noun b) noun + gerund c) noun + adverb d) noun + verb
11. **over size**
a) noun + noun b) preposition + noun c) noun + adverb d) noun + verb
12. **tax free**
a) noun + adverb b) adjective + noun c) noun + adjective d) noun + noun
13. **fast food**
a) preposition + noun b) adjective + noun c) noun + adverb d) noun + gerund
14. **driving licence**
a) gerund + noun b) noun + noun c) noun + verb d) verb + noun
15. **daybreak**
a) noun + adverb b) noun + adjective c) noun + gerund d) noun + verb

Answers

1. c	2. a	3. d	4. b	5. a	6. d	7. c	8. b	9. a	10. d	11. b	12. c	13. b	14. a	15. d
------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------

Self - Evaluation

Choose the correct combination of the given compound word.

1. **postman**
a) noun + adverb b) noun + noun c) noun + verb d) noun + adjective Ans:
2. **baby sit**
a) noun + verb b) noun + noun c) verb + noun d) noun + gerund Ans:

3. **life long**
a) noun + noun b) noun + verb c) adjective + noun d) noun + adjective Ans:
4. **story telling**
a) noun + noun b) noun + adjective c) noun + gerund d) noun + adverb Ans:
5. **world famous**
a) noun + adjective b) noun + gerund c) noun + noun d) noun + verb Ans:
6. **play ground**
a) adjective + noun b) verb + noun c) adverb + noun d) noun + gerund Ans:
7. **output**
a) noun + noun b) noun + verb c) preposition + verb d) gerund + noun Ans:
8. **underlying**
a) noun + verb b) adjective + noun
c) adverb + gerund d) preposition + gerund Ans:
9. **dry clean**
a) adjective + adjective b) noun + noun
c) adverb + adjective d) noun + verb Ans:
10. **blackboard**
a) noun + noun b) adjective + noun c) adjective + adverb d) noun + verb Ans:
11. **call taxi**
a) noun + verb b) noun + adverb c) verb + noun d) adverb + noun Ans:
12. **over coat**
a) preposition + noun b) noun + verb c) adjective + noun d) noun + gerund Ans:
13. **homesick**
a) verb + noun b) noun + verb c) noun + adverb d) noun + adjective Ans:
14. **dancing bird**
a) gerund + noun b) noun + gerund c) adjective + noun d) verb + noun Ans:
15. **bird watching**
a) noun + verb b) noun + gerund c) non + adjective d) noun + noun Ans:
16. **headache**
a) noun + gerund b) noun + adjective c) noun + verb d) adverb + noun Ans:
17. **whitewash**
a) adverb + noun b) noun + adverb c) noun + gerund d) adjective + noun Ans:
18. **downhill**
a) adverb + noun b) adjective + noun
c) noun + verb d) preposition + noun Ans:
19. **clear cut**
a) noun + noun b) gerund + noun c) adjective + noun d) verb + adverb Ans:
20. **upset**
a) verb + verb b) noun + noun
c) adjective + verb d) preposition + verb Ans:

PART - I**8. ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS****Mark : 1****Abbreviations**

- ◇ An abbreviation (from Latin *brevi* + *re* → *brevis* meaning “short”) is a shortened form of a word or phrase used mainly in writing to represent the complete form. It usually has a full-stop at the end.
- eg: Lib. For Library / abbr. for abbreviation / approx. for approximate

Acronyms

- ◇ An acronym (from Latin *acro-* meaning “beginning” + *-onym* meaning “word, name”) is a pronounceable word formed mostly (but not always) from the initial letters of a descriptive name or title.
- eg: radar = radio detecting and ranging

Some of the well-known Abbreviations:

AGM	– Annual General body Meeting	CBI	– Central Bureau of Investigation
ATM	– Automated Teller Machine	CCI	– Cricket Club of India
AC	– Assistant Commissioner, Alternative Current	CID	– Criminal Investigation Department
AD	– Anno Domino	CISF	– Central Industry Security Force
AG	– Accountant General	CBSE	– Central Board of Secondary Education
AICTE	– All India Council of Technical Education	CEO	– Chief Educational Officer / Chief Executive Officer
AITUC	– All India Trade Union Congress	CO	– Commanding Officer
AM	– Ante Meridian	CPI	– Communist Party of India
ASLV	– Augmented Satellite Launch Vehicle	CPU	– Central Processing Unit
BA	– Bachelor of Arts	CRPF	– Central Reserve Police
BBC	– British Broadcasting Corporation	CST	– Central Sales Tax
BC	– Before Christ	DA	– Dearness Allowance
BSF	– Border Security Force	D. Lit.	– Doctor of Literature
BPO	– Business Processing Outsourcing	D. Sc.	– Doctor of Science
BSNL	– Bharat Sanchar Nigam Limited	DC	– Director Current
BPL	– Below Poverty Line	DIG	– Deputy Inspector General
C & AG	– Comptroller and Auditor General	DNA	– Deoxyribonucleic Acid
CA	– Chartered accountant	ECG	– Electro Cardio-gram
CAA	– Citizen Amendment Act	Email	– Electronic Mailing
CD	– Compact Disk	EMI	– Equated Monthly Instalment
CII	– Confederation of Indian Industry	ENT	– Ear, Nose, Throat
CITU	– Centre of Indian Trade Unions	EPF	– Employee Provident Fund
CSIR	– Council of Scientific and Industrial Research	EVM	– Electronic Voting Machine
		FAQ	– Frequently Asked Questions

FBI	– Federal Bureau of Investigation	ITDC	– Indian Tourism Development Corporation
FCI	– Food Corporation of India / Fertilizer Corporation of India	ICICI	– Industrial Credit and Investment Corporation of India
FDI	– Foreign Direct Investment	JEE	– Joint Entrance Examination
FIR	– First Information Report	JPEG	– Joint Photographic Expert Group
FM	– Frequency Modulation	KPO	– Knowledge Process Outsourcing
FRCP	– Fellow of Royal College of Physician	KYC	– Know Your Customer
FRCS	– Fellow of Royal College of Surgeon	LIC	– Life Insurance Corporation of India
FRGS	– Fellow of Royal Geographical Society	LLB	– Bachelor of Law
GATS	– General Agreement on Trade and Science	LCD	– Liquid Crystal Display / Least Common Denominator
GDP	– Gross Domestic Product	MNC	– Multi National Corporation
GMAT	– Graduate Management Admission Test	MRP	– Maximum Retail Prize
GMT	– Greenwich Mean Time	MBBS	– Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery
GSLV	– Geo-Synchronous Satellite Launch Vehicle	MLA	– Member of Legislative Assembly
GST	– Goods and Services Tax	MP	– Member of Parliament
HDFC	– Housing Development Finance Corporation	MPEG	– Motion Picture Experts Group
HIV	– Human Immunodeficiency Virus	MRI	– Magnetic Resonance Imaging
HMT	– Hindustan Machine Tools	MD	– Doctor of Medicine
HTML	– Hyper Text Markup Language	NCERT	– National Council of Education Research and Training
IAS	– Indian Administrative Service	NGO	– Non-Government Organisation
ICSE	– Indian Certificate of Secondary Education	NPR	– National Population Register
ICU	– Intensive Care Unit	NRC	– National Register of Citizenship
IDBI	– Industrial Development Bank of India	NRI	– Non-Resident Indian
IFS	– Indian Foreign Service / Indian Forest Service	NSE	– National Stock Exchange
IIT	– Indian Institute of Technology	NCC	– National Cadets Corps
IMF	– Indian Monetary Fund	NSS	– National Service Scheme
INTUC	– Indian National Trade Union Congress	ONGC	– Oil and Natural Gas Commission
IOC	– Indian Oil Corporation	PDS	– Public Distribution System
IP	– Internet Protocol	Ph. D	– Doctor of Philosophy
IPC	– Indian Penal Code	PPF	– Public Provident Fund
IRDP	– Integrated Rural Development Programme	POW	– Prisoners of War
ISBN	– International Standard Book Number	PWD	– Public Works Department
IST	– India Standard Time	PSLV	– Polar Satellite Launch Vehicle
		RBI	– Reserve Bank of India
		SLV	– Satellite Launch Vehicle

STD – Subscriber Trunk Dialing

UGC – University Grants Commission

UNI – United News of India

UPSE – Union Public Service Commission

URL – Uniform Resource Locator

Some of the well-known Acronyms:

AIDS – Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome

AVADI – Armed Vehicle and Ammunition Depot of India

CAD – Computer Aided Design

CAL – Computer Assisted Learning

CAT – Common Aptitude Test

GATE – Graduate Aptitude Test in Engineering

ISRO – Indian Space Research Organisation

LASER – Light Amplification by Stimulated Emission of Radiation

MODEM – Modulator-Demodulator

MISA – Maintenance of Internal Security Act

NABARD – National Bank for Agricultural and Rural Development

NASSCOM – National Association of Software and Service Companies

NEFT – National Electronic Fund Transfer

NEET – National Eligibility cum Entrance Test

NIFT – National Institute of Fashion Technology

NAAC – National Assessment and Accreditation Council

NASA – National Aeronautics and Space Administration (USA)

NATO – North Atlantic Treaty Organisation

OPEC – Organisation of Petroleum Exporting Countries

PAN – Permanent Account Number

RADAR – Radio Detection and Ranging

RAM – Random Access Memory

RAW – Research and Analysis Wing

POTA – Prevention of Terrorism Act

SAIL – Steel Authority of India Limited

SENSEX – Sensitive Index

SIM – Subscriber Information for Module

TADA – Terrorist and Disruptive Activities Act

TOEFL – Test Of English as Foreign Language

UNESCO – United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation

UNICEF – United Nations International Children's Emergency Fund

VAT – Value Added Tax

Exercise with Answer

Choose the correct expansion of the given abbreviation / acronym.

1. **ATM**

- a) Automatic Teller Machine
- c) Automated Teller Machine

- b) Auto Teller Machine
- d) All Time Money

2. **BPO**

- a) Business Party office
- c) Between Persons Office

- b) Below Poverty Organisation
- d) Business Process Outsourcing

3. **DNA**

- a) Deoxyribonucleic Acid
- c) Demo Nimbus Aid

- b) Dinomicnucleic Acid
- d) Digital Number Aid

4. **FDI**
 - a) Fixed Deposit Investment
 - b) Foreign Direct Investment
 - c) Foreign Digital Index
 - d) Fixed Deposit Improvement
5. **HTML**
 - a) Hindustan Time Movement Limited
 - b) Human Tissue Map Limp
 - c) Hyper Text Makeup Language
 - d) Hinder Tent Makeup Language
6. **KPO**
 - a) Known People Oil
 - b) Knowledge Pin On
 - c) Kind Project Office
 - d) Knowledge Process Outsourcing
7. **NCERT**
 - a) National Council of Education Research and Training
 - b) National Commitment of Education Research and Training
 - c) National Council of Education and Research Trust
 - d) National Council of Education Recommendation and Training
8. **NSS**
 - a) National Sensex System
 - b) National Service Scheme
 - c) Natural Strike Syndrome
 - d) National Sales Society
9. **UGC**
 - a) University Grade Commission
 - b) Union of Government Councils
 - c) University Grants Commission
 - d) University Grant Council
10. **IPC**
 - a) International Public Council
 - b) Indian Permanent Council
 - c) International Penal Code
 - d) Indian Penal Code
11. **NEFT**
 - a) National Electronic Fund Transfer
 - b) National Education of Fashion Technology
 - c) National Employment Fore Trust
 - d) Natural Enquiry Follow Term
12. **PIN**
 - a) Postal Indirect Number
 - b) Permanent Index Number
 - c) Postal Index Number
 - d) Permanent Important Number

Answers											
1. c	2. d	3. a	4. b	5. c	6. d	7. a	8. b	9. c	10. d	11. a	12. c

Self - Evaluation

1. **AVADI**
 - a) All India Vehicle Aided Division of India
 - b) Armed Vehicles Aided Division of India
 - c) Armed Vehicles and Ammunition Division of India
 - d) Armed Vehicles and Ammunition Depot of India

Ans:

2. MNC

- a) Multi-National Corporations
- c) Multi Nano Companies

- b) Multi-National Companies
- d) Multi Nimbus Core

Ans:

3. MODEM

- a) Modulator-Demodulator
- c) Modern Demodulator

- b) Modulation Demonstration
- d) Modern Demonstration

Ans:

4. ISRO

- a) Indian Sari Retail Organisation
- c) Indian Space Research Organisation

- b) International Space Retreat Office
- d) Indian Students Retreat Organisation

Ans:

5. NATO

- a) North Atlantic Treaty Organisation
- c) Natural Amenities Treaty Organisation

- b) National Atlantic Treaty Office
- d) Natural Atlantic Treaty Organisation

Ans:

6. IMF

- a) Indian Multiple Fund
- c) Indian Monetary Fund

- b) International Monetary Fund
- d) Indian Multi Feudalism

Ans:

7. NEET

- a) National Employment Eligibility Test
- c) National Each one Eligibility Test

- b) National Engineering Eligibility Test
- d) National Eligibility cum Entrance Test

Ans:

8. GST

- a) Given Standard Time
- c) Goods and Service Tax

- b) Good Standard Time
- d) Goods Standard Tax

Ans:

9. SAIL

- a) Steal Authority of India Limited
- c) Solid works Authority of India Limited

- b) State Authority of India Limited
- d) Steal Auction of India Limited

Ans:

10. GDP

- a) Gross Domestic Purchase
- c) Great Domestic Product

- b) Gross Domestic Product
- d) Grand Domestic Product

Ans:

11. NAAC

- a) National Auditing and Accounting Commission
- b) National Auditing and Accounting Council
- c) National Aural and Aided Council
- d) National Assessment and Accreditation Council

Ans:

12. FRCS

- a) Fellow of Royal Commission of Surgeon
- c) Fellow of Royal College of Surgeon

- b) Fellow of Research Commission of Surgeons
- d) Fellow of Reach Council of Surgeon

Ans:

13. TOEFL

- a) Test of English as Foreign Language
- c) Test of England as Foreign Land

- b) Term of English as Foreign Language
- d) Tell English as Foreign Language

Ans:

14. EVM

- a) Electro Vehicle Movement
- c) Election Voting Machine

- b) Electronic Voting Machine
- d) Electro Vedanta March

Ans: **15. UNESCO**

- a) Union of National Education, Science and Cultural Organisation
- b) Universal Natural Enlargement of Science College Office
- c) Union of National Education and Synthetic Cultural Organisation
- d) United Nations Education, Science and Cultural Organisation

Ans: **16. CPU**

- a) Central Processing Unit
- c) Centre of People's Union

- b) Central Printing Union
- d) Cell Processing Unit

Ans: **17. DIG**

- a) Different Intelligent Game
- c) Deputy Inspector General

- b) Dig In Grammar
- d) Detailed Interesting Gambling

Ans: **18. CRPF**

- a) Central Retreat of Police Force
- c) Central Range of Protection of Forests

- b) Central Reserve Police Force
- d) Centre of Rehabilitation of People Force

Ans: **19. BSNL**

- a) Below Standard National Language
- c) Bharat Sanchar Nigam Limited

- b) Bharat System Nigam Limited
- d) Bharat Sanchar Need Limited

Ans: **20. AICTE**

- a) All India Culture of Technical Education
- c) All India Council of Teacher Education

- b) All India Centre of Teacher Education
- d) All India Council of Technical Education

Ans:

PART - I**9. QUESTION TAGS****Mark : 1**

- ◇ Question tags are short questions at the end of statements. They are mainly used in speech when we want to : confirm that something is true or not, or to encourage a reply from the person we are speaking to.
- ◇ Question tags are formed with the auxiliary or modal verb from the statement and the appropriate subject.
- ◇ A **positive** statement is followed by a **negative** question tag.
 - Jack is from Spain, **isn't** he?
 - Mary **can** speak English, **can't** she?
- ◇ A **negative** statement is followed by a **positive** question tag.
 - They **aren't** funny, are they?
 - He **shouldn't** say things like that, **should** he?
- ◇ When the verb in the main sentence is in the present simple we form the question tag with **do / does**.
 - You play the guitar, **don't** you?
 - Alison likes tennis, **doesn't** she?
- ◇ If the verb is in the past simple we use **did**.
 - They went to the cinema, **didn't** they?
 - She studied in New Zealand, **didn't** she?
- ◇ When the statement contains a word with a **negative** meaning, the question tag needs to be **positive**
 - He **hardly** ever speaks, **does** he?
 - They **rarely** eat in restaurants, **do** they?

Exceptions

Some verbs / expressions have different question tags. For example:

- **I am** - I am attractive, **aren't** I?
- **Positive imperative** - Stop daydreaming, **will / won't** you?
- **Negative imperative** - Don't stop singing, **will** you?
- **Let's** - Let's go to the beach, **shall** we?
- **Have got (possession)** - He has got a car, **hasn't** he?
- **There is / are** - There aren't any spiders in the bedroom, **are there**?
- **This / that is** - This is Paul's pen, **isn't** it?

Textual Exercises

Page 81

Add suitable question tags to the following sentences and punctuate properly.

No.	Question	Answer
1.	The children are very happy today.	The children are very happy today, aren't they?
2.	You have not returned my books yet.	You have not returned my book yet, have you?
3.	We enjoyed the trip very much.	We enjoyed the trip very much, didn't we?
4.	Let's clean the shelves this weekend.	Let's clean the shelves this weekend, shall we?
5.	My mother rarely travels by bus.	My mother rarely travels by bus, does she?
6.	Somebody must bell the cat.	Somebody must bell the cat, mustn't they?
7.	Anita never comes late to office.	Anita never comes late to office, does she?
8.	I am always the winner.	I am always the winner, aren't I?
9.	Don't commit this mistake again.	Don't commit this mistake again, will you?
10.	There is a pharmacy near that bus stand.	There is a pharmacy near that bus stand, isn't there?
11.	Bacteria can never survive in extreme weather conditions.	Bacteria can never survive in extreme weather condition, can they?
12.	I am not as smart as you are.	I am not as smart as you are, am I?
13.	The boys broke the window pane last evening.	The boys broke the window pane last evening, didn't they?
14.	Leaves wither during autumn.	Leaves wither during autumn, don't they?
15.	You should add a little salt to the buttermilk.	You should add a little salt to the buttermilk, shouldn't you?

Correct the error found in the question tag in each of the following.

Page 81, 82

- | | |
|---|-----------------|
| 1. The evil doers cannot cross the path of truth, can't they? | - can they? |
| 2. The vegetables in the fridge are still fresh, aren't it? | - aren't they? |
| 3. The village head understood the intention of the politician, doesn't he? | - didn't he? |
| 4. I claim to be a person of faith and prayer, aren't I? | - don't I? |
| 5. The employees are seldom allowed to meet their boss, aren't they? | - are they? |
| 6. Let's organize a trip to Goa, can we? | - shall we? |
| 7. The landlady will charge me for the damage, shan't she? | - won't she? |
| 8. Both the sisters have left for Canada, aren't they? | - haven't they? |
| 9. That's definitely not the right thing to do in this situation, isn't that? | - is it? |
| 10. We needn't apply for a bank loan, do we? | - need we? |
| 11. The Chief Guest spoke a few words, did he? | - didn't he? |
| 12. The rhinoceros has a horn made of keratin, haven't they? | - hasn't it? |

Exercise with Answer

Choose the correct question tag for the given sentence.

1. We have already heard the news.
a) didn't we? b) haven't we? c) have we? d) don't we
2. Gita had called you before that.
a) haven't she? b) had she? c) didn't she? d) hadn't she?
3. My friend has borrowed my book.
a) doesn't he? b) has he? c) hasn't he? d) hadn't he
4. Everyone warned you of the consequences.
a) didn't he? b) did they? c) didn't they? d) don't they
5. Mary would come if you requested her.
a) won't she? b) didn't she? c) hadn't she? d) wouldn't she
6. You would better change your wet shirt.
a) didn't you? b) wouldn't you? c) did you? d) will you?
7. She hasn't received her offer letter so far.
a) has she? b) hasn't she? c) is she? d) does she?
8. There wasn't enough time to eat.
a) was it? b) wasn't there? c) was there? d) wasn't there
9. They hardly ever go to market.
a) did they? b) don't they? c) aren't they? d) do they?
10. No one would object to our proposal.
a) won't they? b) wouldn't they? c) would they? d) would he?
11. He isn't David.
a) isn't he? b) is he? c) is it? d) does he?
12. He won't volunteer to do the job.
a) will he? b) won't he c) isn't he? d) would he?

Answers

1. b	2. d	3. c	4. c	5. d	6. b	7. a	8. c	9. d	10. c	11. b	12. a
------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	-------	-------	-------

Self - Evaluation

Choose the correct question tag for the given sentence.

1. She's from a small town in China,
a) is she? b) does she? c) isn't she? d) doesn't she? Ans :
2. They aren't on their way already,
a) are they? b) aren't they c) have they d) haven't they Ans :

3. **We're late again,**
a) are we? b) aren't we c) were we? d) weren't we? **Ans :**
4. **I'm not the person with the tickets,**
a) aren't I? b) don't I c) do I? d) am I **Ans :**
5. **Julie isn't an accountant,**
a) is she? b) isn't she? c) doesn't she? d) does she? **Ans :**
6. **The weather is really bad today,**
a) is he? b) isn't it c) is it? d) does it? **Ans :**
7. **He's very handsome,**
a) is he? b) isn't he? c) does he? d) doesn't he **Ans :**
8. **They aren't in Mumbai at the moment,**
a) are they? b) aren't they? c) have they? d) haven't they **Ans :**
9. **You aren't from Brazil,**
a) are you? b) are you? c) will you? d) won't you? **Ans :**
10. **John will do well as a student,**
a) will he? b) is he c) isn't he? d) wont he? **Ans :**
11. **He likes chocolate very much,**
a) doesn't he? b) does he? c) isn't he? d) is he? **Ans :**
12. **She will not work in a bank,**
a) wont she? b) is it? c) will she? d) isn't it? **Ans :**
13. **They need some new clothes,**
a) do they? b) don't they c) did they? d) didn't they? **Ans :**
14. **We have lived in a tiny flat,**
a) haven't we? b) have we? c) do we? d) don't we? **Ans :**
15. **She studies very hard every night,**
a) does she? b) is it? c) doesn't she? d) isn't she? **Ans :**
16. **David and Julie won't take French classes,**
a) won't they? b) will they? c) will he? d) wont he **Ans :**
17. **I often come home late,**
a) don't I b) do I? c) did I? d) didn't I? **Ans :**
18. **You don't like spicy food,**
a) don't you? b) won't you? c) will you? d) do you? **Ans :**
19. **She doesn't cook very often,**
a) doesn't she? b) does she? c) is she? d) isn't she? **Ans :**
20. **We don't watch much TV,**
a) do we? b) don't we c) did we? d) isn't it? **Ans :**

PART - I**10. SENTENCE PATTERNS****Mark : 1****Sentence Pattern**

- ◇ The following are the components of sentence pattern.
 - S - subject, V - verb, O - object, IO - indirect object, DO - direct object, C - complement, A - adjunct.

Subject

- ◇ When we make a sentence we name some person or thing.
- ◇ We say something about that person or thing. That person or thing is the subject.
 - **The lesson** is interesting.
 - **The crackling geese** saved Rome.
 - **The man** came from Chennai.
 - **Nature** is the best physician.

Verb

- ◇ Usually 'verb' follows the subject.
 - Bad habits **grow** unconsciously.
 - The birds **flew** away.
 - The prince **killed** the giant.
 - She **seems** to be good at music.

Object

- ◇ The word which receives the action from the subject is the object.
 - The cat killed the **mouse**.
 - The Principal called the **boy**.
 - She wrote a **letter**.
 - The scientist created a **robot**.
- ◇ Object is always a noun or noun phrase. Object answers the question verb+what or who(m).
 - He wrote a letter. Wrote what - a letter.
 - She saw a film. Saw what - a film.
 - I met my friend - met whom - my friend

Complement

- ◇ The word or the phrase which completes the sense or meaning of the sentence is called a complement.
- ◇ A Complement is a noun or an adjective.
 - She is a **teacher**. (noun)
 - She became a **teacher**. (noun)
 - He is our **captain**. (noun)
 - She was a good **dancer**. (noun)
 - They are my **friends**. (noun)
 - She seems to be **happy**. (adjective)
 - The novel is very **interesting**. (adjective)
 - They are **watchful**. (adjective)
 - She looks **cheerful**. (adjective)
 - He becomes a **doctor**. (noun)
- ◇ If you use the 'be' verb as the finite verb the next word(s) will be a complement. Some of the other words which give complements are: feel, look, appear, remain, seem, become, sound, taste...

Indirect object and Direct object

- ◇ Certain verbs need one more noun to complete the meaning. In that situation we get one more object.
- ◇ Answer to whom - Indirect Object (IO)
- ◇ Answer to what - Direct Object (DO)
 - She gave me a book. me - IO; a book - DO
 - Mr. John teaches us grammar. us - IO; grammar - DO
- ◇ Some words which take IO & DO: tell, give, award, offer, show, ask, teach, buy, send, lend, promise.

Adjunct

- ◇ Adjunct is adverbial. It does the function of an adverb.
- ◇ It often tells us how, where and when the action takes place. It is not an integrated part of a sentence.
- ◇ Even if we remove this part, the sentence can give full meaning.
- ◇ Adjunct can be shifted from one place to another in a sentence.
 - He came **at night**.
 - I saw the car **through the window**.
 - She waited **patiently**.
 - She drew the picture **with a pencil**.
 - All the other boys stood **behind the screen**.
 - She gave me a pen **yesterday**.

SVOC Pattern

- ◇ subject + verb + object + complement
 - They made him captain. → him – object, captain – complement
 - The parents named him David. → him – object, David – complement
 - My father painted his car blue. → his car – object, blue – complement
 - We elected him our president. → him – object, our president – complement
- ◇ The verbs which take object complements:
make, set, elect, consider, find, like, need, prefer, call, name, keep.....

The basic sentence pattern

S V	–	The boys / came.
S V C	–	They / are / my friends.
S V O	–	He / watches / television.
S V IO DO	–	She / gave / me / a book.
S V O C	–	They / made / him / captain.
S V A	–	Birds / flew / in the sky.
A S V A	–	Yesterday / birds / flew / in the sky.
S V C A	–	He / is / a doctor / in Chennai
S V O A	–	He / watches / television / every day.
S V IO DO A	–	I / wrote / my friend / a letter / last year.
S V O C A	–	We / named / him / Deva / last year.

Exercise with Answer

Choose the sentence pattern for the following sentence.

1. We love sweets.
a) SVC b) SVO c) SVA d) SVOA
2. I sent him greetings.
a) SVOA b) SVOC c) SVO d) SVIODO
3. I have been working hard.
a) SVA b) SVO c) SVC d) SVOC
4. She visited India last year.
a) SVOC b) SVIODO c) SVOA d) SVO
5. Today you are learning a new lesson.
a) SAVO b) ASVO c) SVIODO d) SVOA
6. He plays cricket.
a) SVC b) SVA c) SVOC d) SVO
7. We watch TV everyday.
a) SVOA b) SVOC c) SVIODO d) SVO
8. Mr. Kumar is an engineer.
a) SVO b) SVA c) SVC d) SVOC
9. The flower looks fresh.
a) SCO b) SVC c) SVA d) SVOAA
10. Her uncle presented her a watch.
a) SVIODO b) SVOC c) SCOA d) ASOVA

Answers									
1. b	2. d	3. a	4. c	5. b	6. d	7. a	8. c	9. b	10. a

Self - Evaluation

Choose the sentence pattern for the following sentence.

1. The entire scene looked natural.
a) SVIODO b) SVC c) SVA d) SVO Ans :
2. They presented me a book as outstanding writer.
a) SVIODO b) SVOC c) SVIODO d) SVOAA Ans :
3. The police set up road block along the highway.
a) SVOC b) SVOIODO c) SVOAA d) SVOA Ans :
4. Usha won many national and international awards.
a) SVA b) SVC c) SVAA d) SVO Ans :

5. Suera recited a poem in the class.
a) SVO b) SVO c) SVOA d) SVIODO Ans :
6. No doubt, Danish is a brilliant student.
a) SVA b) ASVC c) ASVO d) ASVA Ans :
7. Sara left the office sometime back.
a) SVOA b) AVOC c) SVO d) SVIODO Ans :
8. We should remember our friends.
a) SVC b) SVA c) SVO d) SVOA Ans :
9. The birds flew.
a) SVO b) SVA c) SVC d) SV Ans :
10. My friends went to Chennai.
a) SVA b) SVC c) SVO d) SVOC Ans :
11. We called her proud pea - hen.
a) SVOA b) SVOC c) SVO d) SVIODO Ans :
12. They watched the game at the stadium.
a) SVOC b) SVIODO c) SVOA d) SVOAA Ans :
13. We sent our uncle a gift.
a) SVOC b) SVOA c) SVCA d) SVIODO Ans :
14. She answered the questions instantly.
a) SVOC b) SVOA c) SVIODO d) SVAA Ans :
15. Here comes Hamlet.
a) AVS b) ASV c) SVO d) SVC Ans :
16. In 1969, Neil Armstrong landed on the moon.
a) SVOA b) SVCA c) ASVIODO d) ASVA Ans :
17. Speak the truth on the stage.
a) SVO b) VOA c) SVA d) SVC Ans :
18. Our teacher always writes on the blackboard.
a) SAVA b) SAVO c) SAVC d) SAVOC Ans :
19. The meeting took place on Sunday at the Hall.
a) SVOA b) SVOC c) SVAA d) SVIODO Ans :
20. He appears dull today.
a) SVOA b) SVAA c) SVIODO d) SVCA Ans :

PART - I

11. RELATIVE PRONOUNS

Mark : 1

- ◇ A relative pronoun is one which is used to refer to nouns mentioned previously, whether they are people, places, things, animals, or ideas.
- ◇ Relative pronouns can be used to join two sentences.
- ◇ There are only a few relative pronouns in the English language.
- ◇ The most common are which, that, whose, whoever, whomever, who, and whom.
- ◇ In some situations, the words what, when, and where can also function as relative pronouns.
- ◇ Relative pronouns are placed directly after the noun or pronoun they modify. For example:
 - The driver **who** *ran the stopsign* was careless.
 - The children **whom** *we love dearly* need better education.
 - I have a friend **whose** *cat is annoying*.
 - The book **which** *is now out of print* has all the information you need.
 - This is the book **that** *everyone is talking about*.
- ◇ In each example above, the subject of the sentence is described by a relative clause (italicized).
- ◇ As these clauses describe a noun or a pronoun, they are also known as adjective clauses, because they act like adjectives in the sentence.
- ◇ Each clause is introduced by a relative pronoun (in bold)

A note about **who**, **that** and **which**

- ◇ One of the most common mistakes in writing is to use the wrong relative pronoun, particularly when it comes to mixing up “who” and “that.”
- ◇ “Who” is always used to set up a relative clause that describes a person, while “that” is used to describe an object or another non-human being, in some cases human being too if it refers to common noun. For example:
 - I like the girl *who runs fast*.
 - I like the dog *that does tricks*.
 - I like the clock *that chimes the hour*.
- ◇ Another common error is to mix up ‘that’ and ‘which’. When describing objects and non-human beings, “that” is used to introduce a defining relative clause, while “which” is used to introduce a non-defining clause. For example:
 - The cat, *which is very old*, took a nap.
 - The cat *that is very old* needs to see the vet today.

Exercise with Answer

Fill in the blanks with relative pronoun.

1. I bought all the tools _____ are needed for fixing the TV.
- a) whose b) whom c) which d) who

2. This is the doctor _____ helped Sara recover from illness.
a) whose b) whom c) that d) who
3. This is the teacher _____ he appreciates all the time.
a) whom b) whose c) that d) which
4. These are the kids _____ parents work in MNCs
a) whom b) whose c) which d) who
5. She managed to pass the exam despite all difficulties _____ were unexpected.
a) whom b) whose c) which d) who
6. Give me the gift _____ is on the plate.
a) which b) who c) whom d) whose
7. The boy _____ did it felt sorry.
a) whom b) who c) that d) whose
8. The criminals, two of _____ had managed to escape, broke into the bank.
a) whose b) who c) which d) whom
9. The police identified the murderer _____ fingerprints were on the knife.
a) who b) which c) whose d) whom
10. I know the candidate _____ I am going to support in the next election.
a) whom b) whose c) that d) who

Answers									
1. c	2. d	3. a	4. b	5. c	6. a	7. b	8. d	9. c	10. a

Self - Evaluation

Fill in the blanks with relative pronoun.

1. The computer _____ I bought last week is already broken.
a) whom b) which c) who d) when Ans :
2. This is the place _____ I met my friend yesterday.
a) where b) when c) who d) whose Ans :
3. This is the man for _____ Sunder works.
a) where b) who c) whom d) whose Ans :
4. This is the company _____ my brother works.
a) when b) who c) whose d) where Ans :
5. The festival _____ lasted for all day ended with dinner.
a) where b) whose c) which d) when Ans :
6. He came inside the class _____ was noisy.
a) which b) where c) whom d) who Ans :

7. I am looking for someone _____ can look after my dog.
a) when b) whose c) where d) who Ans :
8. The police needed details _____ could help to identify the robber.
a) when b) that c) who d) whom Ans :
9. I would like you to take you to a café _____ you can get excellent coffee.
a) which b) that c) where d) who Ans :
10. The hall _____ the dance competition was held was decorated well.
a) which b) where c) when d) whom Ans :
11. You can choose one person _____ you like to share the room with you.
a) whomever b) whoever c) wherever d) whenever Ans :
12. I saw the shoes _____ you bought last week.
a) whom b) who c) whose d) that Ans :
13. The winners _____ receive the prizes, will be given cash awards.
a) where b) whom c) who d) that Ans :
14. This is the place _____ we met last year.
a) when b) where c) whom d) that Ans :
15. I know a restaurant _____ we can get good lunch.
a) where b) when c) whom d) which Ans :
16. Sam knows a man _____ brother works in a good school.
a) who b) whom c) whose d) where Ans :
17. People _____ build glass houses should not throw stones.
a) when b) where c) which d) who Ans :
18. Students _____ study hard will get good grades.
a) whom b) who c) where d) whose Ans :
19. Food _____ is imported is very expensive.
a) that b) who c) when d) where Ans :
20. My home is the place _____ I can relax after work.
a) when b) whose c) where d) which Ans :

PART - I**12. PREFIXES AND SUFFIXES****Mark : 1****Prefix and Suffix**

- ◇ Prefix is a set of letters, which is usually used in front of a word. However, it changes the entire meaning of the word.
- ◇ On the other hand, suffix is a set of letters that comes at the end of a word. The use of these two affixes, change the meaning of the base word or the root word.
- ◇ The most common prefixes used to form new nouns in academic English are: co- and sub-.
- ◇ The most common suffixes are: *-tion, -ity, -er, -ness, -ism, -ment, -ant, -ship, -age, -ery*.
- ◇ By far the most common noun affix in academic English is *-tion*.

Nouns

prefix + noun → noun

Prefix	Meaning	Examples
<i>anti-</i>	against	anticlimax, antidote, antithesis
<i>auto-</i>	self	autobiography, automobile
<i>bi-</i>	two	bilingualism, biculturalism, bi-metalism
<i>co-</i>	joint	co-founder, co-owner, co-descendant
<i>counter-</i>	against	counter-argument, counter-example, counter-proposal
<i>dis-</i>	the converse of	discomfort, dislike
<i>ex-</i>	former	ex-chairman, ex-hunter
<i>hyper-</i>	extreme	hyperinflation, hypersurface
<i>in-</i>	the converse of	inattention, incoherence, incompatibility
<i>in-</i>	inside	inpatient,
<i>inter-</i>	between	interaction, inter-change, interference
<i>kilo-</i>	thousand	kilobyte
<i>mal-</i>	bad	malfunction, maltreatment, malnutrition
<i>mega-</i>	million	megabyte
<i>mis-</i>	wrong	misconduct, misdeed, mismanagement
<i>mini-</i>	small	mini-publication, mini-theory
<i>mono-</i>	one	monosyllable, monograph, monogamy
<i>neo-</i>	new	neo-colonialism, neo-impressionism
<i>out-</i>	separate	outbuilding,
<i>poly-</i>	many	polysyllable
<i>pseudo-</i>	false	pseudo-expert
<i>re-</i>	again	re-organisation, re-assessment, re-examination
<i>semi-</i>	half	semicircle, semi-darkness

<i>sub-</i>	below	subset, subdivision
<i>super-</i>	more than, above	superset, superimposition, superpowers
<i>sur-</i>	over and above	surtax
<i>tele-</i>	distant	telecommunications,
<i>tri-</i>	three	tripartism
<i>ultra-</i>	beyond	ultrasound
<i>under-</i>	below, too little	underpayment, under-development, undergraduate
<i>vice-</i>	deputy	vice-president

- ◇ The most common prefixes used to form new verbs in academic English are:
re-, dis-, over-, un-, mis-, out-.
- ◇ The most common suffixes are:
-ise, -en, -ate, -(i)fy. By far the most common affix in academic English is -ise.

Verbs

prefix + verb → verb

Prefix	Meaning	Examples
<i>re-</i>	again or back	restructure, revisit, reappear, rebuild, refinance
<i>dis-</i>	reverses the meaning of the verb	disappear, disallow, disarm, disconnect, discontinue
<i>over-</i>	too much	overbook, oversleep, overwork
<i>un-</i>	reverses the meaning of the verb	unbend, uncouple, unfasten
<i>mis-</i>	badly or wrongly	mislead, misinform, misidentify
<i>out-</i>	more or better than others	outperform, outbid
<i>be-</i>	make or cause	befriend, belittle
<i>co-</i>	together	co-exist, co-operate, co-own
<i>de-</i>	do the opposite of	devalue, deselect
<i>fore-</i>	earlier, before	foreclose, foresee
<i>inter-</i>	between	interact, intermix, interface
<i>pre-</i>	before	pre-expose, prejudice, pretest
<i>sub-</i>	under/below	subcontract, subdivide
<i>trans-</i>	across, over	transform, transcribe, transplant
<i>under-</i>	not enough	underfund, undersell, undervalue, underdevelop

Suffix

Suffix added to a verb (V), noun (N) or adjective (A) → noun

Suffix	Meaning	Examples
<i>-tion, -sion</i>	action/instance of	alteration, demonstration expansion, inclusion, admission
<i>-er</i>	person who something used for	advertiser, driver, computer, silencer

-ment	action/instance of	development, punishment, unemployment
-ant, -ent	person who	assistant, consultant student
-age	action/result of	breakage, wastage, package
-al	action/result of	denial, proposal, refusal, dismissal
-ence, -ance	action/result of	preference, dependence, interference attendance, acceptance, endurance
-ery/-ry	action/instance of/place of	bribery, robbery, misery, refinery, bakery
-er	person concerned with	astronomer, geographer
-ism	doctrine of	Marxism, Maoism, Thatcherism
-ship	state of being	friendship, citizenship, leadership
-age	collection of	baggage, plumage
-ity	state or quality of being	ability, similarity, responsibility, curiosity
-ness	state or quality of being	darkness, preparedness, consciousness
-cy	state or quality of being	urgency, efficiency, frequency

Textual Exercises

Page 7

Form two derivatives from each of the following words by adding prefixes and suffixes.

Word	Prefix	Suffix
honour	dishonour	honourable
respect	disrespect	respectable
manage	mismanage	management
fertile	infertile	fertility
different	indifferent	difference
friend	befriend	friendly
obey	disobey	obedience

Exercise with Answer

Form a derivative by adding right prefix / suffix to the given word.

- The king was ____ throned by his enemies.
a) de b) re c) dis d) mis
- The ____ Bishop conducted the mass.
a) ir b) mult c) arch d) inter
- It was ____ possible for the team to win the match.
a) ir b) multi c) im d) inter
- The situation was very ____ pleasant for the manager.
a) ir b) multi c) im d) un

5. He was riding his ____ cycle to school.
a) bi b) multi c) im d) inter
6. The manager called the ____ author to discuss the publication of the new book.
a) ir b) multi c) co d) inter
7. The police try to ____ code the signals of the terrorist.
a) ir b) de c) im d) inter
8. The teacher appreciated the ____ gram of the student.
a) ir b) multi c) im d) dia
9. The mother decided to ____ courage her son though he did not do well in the exam.
a) en b) multi c) im d) inter
10. A private agency issued a weather ____ cast.
a) ir b) fore c) im d) inter

Answers									
1. a	2. c	3. c	4. d	5. a	6. c	7. b	8. d	9. a	10. b

Self - Evaluation

Form a derivative by adding right prefix / suffix to the given word.

1. The old lady was ____ active because of her illness.
a) ir b) multi c) in d) inter Ans :
2. My neighbour was arrested because he was doing some ____ legal activities.
a) il b) multi c) im d) inter Ans :
3. Only God is ____ mortal.
a) ir b) multi c) im d) inter Ans :
4. The doctor found out the ____ function of liver.
a) ir b) mal c) im d) inter Ans :
5. My sister is interested to study ____ biology.
a) micro b) multi c) im d) inter Ans :
6. I want to work in ____ media.
a) ir b) inter c) im d) multi Ans :
7. He lost his chance because he was ____ confident.
a) over b) multi c) im d) inter Ans :
8. He was not allowed to sit for the exam because of ____ payment of fees.
a) ir b) multi c) non d) inter Ans :
9. We are interested in ____ door games.
a) out b) multi c) im d) inter Ans :
10. I selected ____ paid scheme for my mobile.
a) ir b) multi c) inter d) pre Ans :

11. My brother decided to join ____technic college.
a) poly b) multi c) im d) inter Ans :
12. On the way to my school we have a ____box.
a) ir b) post c) im d) inter Ans :
13. The manager decided to ____agree with the demands of the workers.
a) ir b) dis c) im d) pre Ans :
14. The teacher asked to students to ____arrange the books.
a) re b) multi c) im d) inter Ans :
15. The students are asked to learn about ____conductor.
a) ir b) multi c) semi d) inter Ans :
16. The manager asked the ____editor to write an article on education.
a) ir b) multi c) im d) sub Ans :
17. She bought a ____lingual dictionary.
a) ir b) multi c) im d) pro Ans :
18. We are ____certain about our visit to the Taj Mahal
a) ir b) un c) im d) pro Ans :
19. The tree in front of the school was ____developed.
a) ir b) multi c) under d) pro Ans :
20. The students wear ____form everyday.
a) ir b) multi c) uni d) pro Ans :

PART - I**13. SYLLABIFICATION****Mark : 1**

- ◇ Syllabification is the separation of a word into syllables, whether spoken or written.
- ◇ Syllable is any of the units into which a word is divided, containing a vowel sound with or without a consonant sound before or after.
- ◇ A word may have one or more syllables. Thus we get mono syllabic, di syllabic, tri syllabic, tetra syllabic, penta syllabic .
 - A word with 1 syllable – mono syllabic – chair
 - A word with 2 syllables – di syllabic – father
 - A word with 3 syllables – tri syllabic – accident
 - A word with 4 syllables – tetra syllabic – preparation
 - A word with 5 syllables – penta syllabic – examination

Note

- ◇ When the same consonant gets repeated, it is divided in the middle.
 - eg. **ac-ci-dent**, **ec-cen-tric**, **gram-mar**, **let-ter**

- ◇ Prefixes like mis, de, il, ir, im, un, non, re, dis, fore, en, pre, tri, bi, etc. become separate syllables.
- eg. **il**-le-gal, **mis**-for-tune, **fore**-fa-ther, **en**-cou-rage.
- ◇ Suffixes like -ly, -hood, -tion, -ty, -al, -ful, -able, etc. become separate syllables.
- eg. love-**ly**, child-**hood**, pre-pa-ra-**tion**, lo-**yal-ty**.
- (In each syllable, **only one vowel sound** not vowel letter should be present)

Word	Syllabification	No. of syllables
foothills	foot-hills	2 syllables – disyllabic
strawberries	straw-ber-ries	3 syllables – trisyllabic
disapproval	dis-ap-pro-val	4 syllables – tetrasyllabic
fruit	fruit	1 syllable – monosyllabic
frame	frame	1 syllable – monosyllabic
companion	com-pa-ni-on	4 syllables – tetrasyllabic
fountain	fount-ain	2 syllables – disyllabic
seriously	se-riously-ly	3 syllables – trisyllabic
remarkable	re-mark-a-ble	4 syllables – tetrasyllabic
destinations	des-ti-na-tion	4 syllables – tetrasyllabic
permission	per-mis-sion	3 syllables – trisyllabic
geographical	ge-o-graph-i-cal	5 syllables – pentasyllabic
petition	pet-ti-tion	3 syllables – trisyllabic
prison	pri-son	2 syllables – disyllabic
controversial	con-tro-ver-si-al	5 syllables – pentasyllabic
stimulation	sti-mu-la-tion	4 syllables – tetrasyllabic
despised	des-pised	2 syllables – disyllabic
strong	strong	1 syllable – monosyllabic
optimistic	op-ti-mis-tic	4 syllables – tetrasyllabic
virtues	virtues	1 syllable – monosyllabic
rationing	ra-tion-ing	3 syllables – trisyllabic
heaped	heaped	1 syllable – monosyllabic
recognised	re-cog-nised	3 syllables – trisyllabic
information	in-for-ma-tion	4 syllables – tetrasyllabic
daughter	daugh-ter	2 syllables – disyllabic
elements	e-le-ments	3 syllables – trisyllabic
allowed	allowed	1 syllable – monosyllabic
exhaust	ex-haust	2 syllables – disyllabic
delusion	de-lu-sion	3 syllables – trisyllabic
consent	con-sent	2 syllables – disyllabic
proportionally	pro-po-tion-al-ly	5 syllables – pentasyllabic

Exercise with Answer

Choose the appropriate syllabification for the given word.

1. **electronic**
a) e-lec-tro-nic b) elec-tro-nic c) e-lect-ro-nic d) e-lect-ron-ic
2. **psychology**
a) psy-cho-l-ogy b) psy-chol-o-gy c) psycho-lo-gy d) psy-cho-lo-gy
3. **organisation**
a) org-ani-sa-tion b) org-a-ni-sa-tion c) or-ga-ni-sa-tion d) org-a-ni-sa-tion
4. **defect**
a) def-ect b) de-fect c) d-ef-ect d) def-e-ct
5. **grammatical**
a) gram-ma-ti-cal b) gram-ma-t-i-cal c) gram-ma-tic-al d) gramm-a-tic-al
6. **population**
a) pop-u-la-tion b) po-pu-la-tion c) po-pul-a-tion d) po-pu-l-a-tion
7. **comprehensive**
a) comp-re-hen-sive b) compr-e-hen-sive c) com-pre-hen-sive d) com-pre-hens-ive
8. **appreciation**
a) ap-pre-ci-ation b) ap-pre-ci-at-ion c) app-re-ci-ation d) ap-pre-ci-a-tion
9. **inspiration**
a) insp-i-ra-tion b) ins-pi-ra-tion c) ins-pi-rat-ion d) in-spi-ra-tion
10. **facilitate**
a) fa-ci-li-tate b) fac-i-litate c) fa-cilit-ate d) fa-c-i-lit-ate
11. **demonstrate**
a) de-mo-n-strate b) de-mon-strate c) de-mon-st-rate d) de-mons-trate
12. **argumentative**
a) ar-gu-men-ta-tive b) arg-u-men-ta-tive c) argue-men-ta-tive d) ar-gu-ment-a-tive
13. **daughter**
a) dau-gh-ter b) daugh-ter c) dau-ght-er d) dau-g-hter
14. **institution**
a) ins-ti-tu-tion b) ins-ti-tu-ti-on c) in-sti-tu-tion d) in-sti-tut-ion
15. **association**
a) as-so-ci-ation b) as-so-ci-a-tion c) as-so-ciat-ion d) as-soci-a-tion

Answers

1. a	2. d	3. c	4. b	5. a	6. b	7. c	8. d	9. b	10. a	11. d	12. a	13. b	14. c	15. b
------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------

Self - Evaluation

1. Choose the monosyllabic word.
a) paper b) queue c) emigrant d) defect
2. Choose the disyllabic word.
a) detect b) expression c) advantage d) banana
3. Choose the trisyllabic word.
a) psychology b) dramatic c) activity d) defect
4. Choose the tetrasyllabic word.
a) contact b) conclusion c) playground d) grammatical
5. Choose the monosyllabic word.
a) introduce b) organ c) facilitate d) bench
6. Choose the trisyllabic word.
a) monkey b) calculate c) appreciation d) electronic
7. Choose the tetrasyllabic word.
a) geographical b) organisation c) fantastic d) comprehensive
8. Choose the disyllabic word.
a) plane b) daughter c) population d) memory
9. Choose the monosyllabic word.
a) creation b) blame c) establish d) communicate
10. Choose the tetrasyllabic word.
a) population b) statistics c) fatherly d) association
11. Choose the monosyllabic word.
a) paper b) speech c) contact d) entertain
12. Choose the trisyllabic word.
a) particular b) anticipated c) headmistress d) student
13. Choose the monosyllabic word.
a) resemble b) stick c) disability d) later
14. Choose the disyllabic word.
a) action b) magazine c) house d) bleak
15. Choose the monosyllabic word.
a) political b) economic c) electronic d) chair

PART - I**14. CLIPPED WORDS****Mark : 1**

- ◇ Clipping is the word formation process in which a word is reduced or shortened without changing the meaning of the word.
- ◇ Clipping differs from back-formation in that the new word retains the meaning of the original word. For example:

advertisement – ad
 alligator – gator
 examination – exam
 gasoline – gas
 gymnasium – gym
 influenza – flu
 laboratory – lab

mathematics – math
 memorandum – memo
 photograph – photo
 public house – pub
 representative – rep
 telephone – phone

There are three ways of clipping.

- ◇ Front clipping. eg: (fountain) pen
- ◇ Back clipping. eg: disco(theque)
- ◇ Front and back clipping. eg: (in) flu (enza)

Some of the common clipped words.

aeroplane – plane
 advertisement – ad
 alchemist – chemist
 alligator – gator
 automobile – auto
 bicycle – bike
 bridegroom – groom
 cabriolet – cab
 caravan – van
 cellphone – cell
 chrysanthemum – mum
 coeducation – coed
 delicatessen – deli
 dormitory – dorm
 enthusiasm – enth
 examination – exam
 fanatic – fan
 gasoline – gas
 gymnasium – gym
 hamburger – burger

hand kerchief – kerchief
 hippopotamus – hippo
 influenza – flu
 information – info
 introduction – intro
 invitation – invite
 laboratory – lab
 limousine – limo
 luncheon – lunch
 mathematics – math
 memorandum – memo
 moving picture – movie
 non-vegetarian – non-veg
 omnibus – bus
 pantaloons – pants
 perquisite – perk
 photograph – photo
 pianoforte – piano
 promenade – prom
 public house – pub

referee – ref
refrigerator – fridge
representative – rep
saxophone – sax
signature – sign
situational comedy – sitcom
spectacles – specs

submarine – sub
telephone – phone
typographical error – typo
university – varsity
vegetarian – veg
zoological garden – zoo

Exercise with Answer

Choose the clipped word for the given word.

- | | | | | | |
|--------------------|---|-------------|----------|----------------|------------|
| 1. laboratory | - | a) lab | b) labt | c) labs | d) lay |
| 2. fountain pen | - | a) fountain | b) fount | c) fopen | d) pen |
| 3. hamburger | - | a) ham | b) buge | c) burger | d) hamer |
| 4. telephone | - | a) phone | b) tele | c) teleph | d) telep |
| 5. omnibus | - | a) omni | b) nib | c) ous | d) bus |
| 6. demarcate | - | a) deman | b) cate | c) mark | d) marc |
| 7. taxicab | - | a) taxic | b) taxi | c) tab | d) xcab |
| 8. university | - | a) varsity | b) univ | c) univer | d) versity |
| 9. caravan | - | a) car | b) cara | c) ravan | d) van |
| 10. diskette | - | a) dit | b) ditte | c) disc / disk | d) dete |
| 11. microphone | - | a) phone | b) mike | c) mig | d) microp |
| 12. advertisement | - | a) ad | b) advt | c) adt | d) advet |
| 13. bicycle | - | a) bi | b) bic | c) bicle | d) cycle |
| 14. representative | - | a) rep | b) rept | c) repe | d) res |
| 15. suitcase | - | a) case | b) suit | c) sucase | d) cas |

Answers

1. a	2. d	3. c	4. a	5. d	6. c	7. b	8. a	9. d	10. c	11. b	12. a	13. d	14. a	15. a
------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------

Self - Evaluation

Choose the clipped word for the given word.

- | | | | | | | |
|-----------------------|---|------------|-------------|----------|----------|---------------------------|
| 1. aeroplane | - | a) aero | b) plain | c) plan | d) plane | Ans: <input type="text"/> |
| 2. pop music | - | a) pop | b) music | c) muse | d) popm | Ans: <input type="text"/> |
| 3. veterinary surgeon | - | a) surgeon | b) vety | c) surge | d) vet | Ans: <input type="text"/> |
| 4. Polio-myelitis | - | a) polio | b) myelites | c) mytis | d) pomy | Ans: <input type="text"/> |
| 5. demonstration | - | a) state | b) demon | c) den | d) demo | Ans: <input type="text"/> |
| 6. perambulator | - | a) ambula | b) ambu | c) pram | d) lator | Ans: <input type="text"/> |

7. helicopter	- a) copter	b) heli	c) cop	d) helicon	Ans: <input type="text"/>
8. gymnasium	- a) gum	b) gym	c) sium	d) nasium	Ans: <input type="text"/>
9. hand kerchief	- a) hand	b) kerf	c) kerchief	d) kerp	Ans: <input type="text"/>
10. refrigerator	- a) fridge	b) refri	c) gerator	d) refree	Ans: <input type="text"/>
11. discotheque	- a) disque	b) coth	c) disco	d) discoque	Ans: <input type="text"/>
12. kilogram	- a) kilo	b) gram	c) kg	d) km	Ans: <input type="text"/>
13. signature	- a) nature	b) nate	c) signee	d) sign	Ans: <input type="text"/>
14. photograph	- a) photo	b) graph	c) graf	d) foto	Ans: <input type="text"/>
15. perquisites	- a) pers	b) sites	c) petqs	d) perks	Ans: <input type="text"/>
16. influenza	- a) influence	b) fluence	c) flu	d) fluensa	Ans: <input type="text"/>
17. saxophone	- a) phone	b) sax	c) xoph	d) saxo	Ans: <input type="text"/>
18. perambulator	- a) pram	b) peram	c) lator	d) prem	Ans: <input type="text"/>
19. zoological park	- a) park	b) logic	c) zool	d) zoo	Ans: <input type="text"/>
20. spectacles	- a) specs	b) cles	c) tacles	d) spect	Ans: <input type="text"/>

PART - I**15. FOREIGN WORDS****Mark : 1****Some of the common foreign words in English language.**

addenda	- list of additions	ex officio	- by virtue of one's position
ad lib	- improvised	fait accompli	- an established fact
ad hoc	- not planned, for a particular purpose	fatwa	- legal opinion of Muslim leader
alma mater	- previous school	femme fatale	- highly attractive woman who means trouble
annus mirabilis	- auspicious year	fiasco	- disaster
ballet	- a form of dance	habeas corpus	- protection against unlawful imprisonment
bon voyage	- have a nice trip	halal	- meat slaughtered according to Islamic law
bona fide	- genuine	in absentia	- while not present
bravura	- performed with energy and skill	in camera	- in private
café	- coffee house	in toto	- as a whole
de facto	- actual	laissez faire	- policy of non-interference
en masse	- in great number	lingua franca	- common language
entrepreneur	- businessman		
ex gratia	- pavement as a favour		

magnum opus	- important work of an artist	pro forma	- done for the sake of form
modus operandi	- method of operating	rendezvous	- meeting place
moped	- pedal cycle with engine and wheels	safari	- journey or expedition
nom de plume	- pen name	sine die	- adjourned indefinitely
per annum	- for each year	status quo	- existing condition
per capita	- for each person	tete-a-tete	- private conversation
persona non grata	- unwelcome person	via media	- compromise
prima facie	- at first view	vendetta	- private revenge feud
		vis-à-vis	- as compared with

Exercise with Answer

Choose the meaning of the foreign word in the sentence.

- The parliament session was adjourned sine die.
a) for next session b) for tomorrow c) for next year d) indefinitely
- The police found out the modus operandi of the murderer.
a) method of operating b) method of escaping
c) method of contacting d) method of talking
- The management accepted the demands of the employees in toto.
a) partly b) happily c) as a whole d) with difficulty
- The owner's decision was fiasco to all the workers.
a) useful b) disaster c) immediate sanction d) acceptable
- They could not do anything because it was fait accompli.
a) established fact b) accepted by all c) dangerous d) difficult
- People appreciated her because of her bravura.
a) beauty and charm b) performance with skill and energy
c) kind character d) helping tendency
- The management team resigned en masse.
a) with difficulty b) happily c) creating trouble d) in great number / together
- The painter produced his magnum opus.
a) richness b) large number of painting
c) master piece d) few of his paintings
- The institution was de facto divided between two groups.
a) in fact, whether right or wrong b) trying to be
c) with proper permission d) happily
- The government announced ex gratia Rs. 25000 for all those affected by the flood.
a) rightful b) wrongly c) as a favour d) its own

Answers									
1. d	2. a	3. c	4. b	5. a	6. b	7. d	8. c	9. a	10. c

Self - Evaluation

Choose the meaning of the foreign word in the sentence.

1. People suffer because of the ad hoc decisions of the government.
 a) planned b) not planned c) difficult d) sad Ans:
2. As per Chinese calendar this is annus mirabilis.
 a) auspicious year b) important year c) year of suffering d) year of poverty Ans:
3. Principal is the ex officio chairman of academic council.
 a) present b) previous
 c) unlawfully d) by virtue of his post Ans:
4. The student has to produce a bona fide certificate to avail the education loan.
 a) genuine student b) certificate from the municipality
 c) income certificate d) certificate from the police Ans:
5. My neighbour is a femme fatale.
 a) attractive and kind person b) attractive and troublesome person
 c) very helpful to others d) unattractive but kind person Ans:
6. He filed an application for habeas corpus of his father.
 a) get his release b) produce him in the court
 c) save him from gallows d) send him home Ans:
7. My friend follows laissez faire attitude to life.
 a) carefully planned life
 b) happy to follow rules
 c) leaving things to take their own path without interfering
 d) Checking the growth now and then to change the way Ans:
8. English is the lingua franca of many countries.
 a) mother tongue b) acceptable language
 c) attractive language d) common language Ans:
9. The lawyer produced the prima facie report of the financial misconduct.
 a) at first view b) detailed report c) collected d) eye witness Ans:
10. Sujatha was the nom de plume of Rangarajan.
 a) name given by his parents b) name given by his fans / readers
 c) pen name d) nick name Ans:
11. He hit a century in his debut.
 a) native country b) foreign land
 c) style d) first appearance Ans:
12. He wanted to visit his alma mater.
 a) grandparents' house b) previous school
 c) previous master d) old friends Ans:

13. The chairman has become persona non grata because of his strict measures.

- a) a person who is unwelcome b) a person who frightens others
c) a methodical person d) a dangerous person

Ans:

14. Tamilnadu is the rendezvous for the Russian President and Indian Prime Minister.

- a) a place to avoid b) popular place
c) scheduled meeting place d) tourist place

Ans:

15. The council of managers decided to keep status quo in the case of workers' demand.

- a) changing the model b) demanding more work
c) sending out the extra workers d) existing condition

Ans:

PART - I

16. BLENDED WORDS

Mark : 1

Blended Words

- ◇ A word blend is formed by combining two separate words with different meanings to form a new one.
- ◇ These words are often created to describe a new invention or phenomenon that combines the definitions or traits of two existing things.

newscast	- news	+ broadcast
interpol	- international	+ police
travelogue	- travel	+ catalogue
electrocute	- electro	+ execute
heliport	- helicopter	+ airport
docudrama	- documentary	+ drama
edutainment	- education	+ entertainment
motel	- motorway	+ hotel
smog	- smoke	+ fog
techno-wizard	- technology	+ wizard
vegeburger	- vegetable	+ burger
infomercial	- information	+ commercial
lecdem	- lecture	+ demonstration
edusat	- education	+ satellite
internet	- international	+ network
telecast	- television	+ broadcast
medicare	- medical	+ care
mimsy	- miserable	+ flimsy
moped	- motor	+ pedal cycle

telex	- teleprinter	+ exchange
bit	- binary	+ digit
mobike	- motor	+ bike
modem	- modulator	+ demodulator
infotech	- information	+ technology
e-mail	- electronic	+ mail
hi-tech	- higher	+ technology
mediclaim	- medical	+ claim
pixel	- picture	+ element
fortnight	- fourteen	+ nights
breathalyser	- breath	+ analyser
camcorder	- camera	+ recorder
fantabulous	- fantastic	+ fabulous
transistor	- transfer	+ resistor
teleconference	- telephone	+ conference
melodrama	- melody	+ drama
brunch	- breakfast	+ lunch
agronomy	- agriculture	+ economy

Exercise with Answer

Choose the right combination for the blended word.

- 1. medicare**
a) medi + care b) medical + care c) medicine + care d) medicinal + care
- 2. motel**
a) motor + hotel
c) motor road + hotel b) motor cycle + hotel mm
d) motorway + hotel
- 3. travelogue**
a) tra + logue b) travels + catalogue c) travel + catatogue d) travel + logue
- 4. lecdem**
a) lecture + demo b) lecture + demonstration
c) lecture + demonstration d) lectural + demo
- 5. heliport**
a) helicopter + port b) helicopter + airport c) heli + port d) helicopter + airporter
- 6. handycam**
a) handy + video camera b) hand + camera video
c) hand + video camera d) hand + video camera
- 7. camcorder**
a) camera + record b) camera + recorder c) camera + recorder d) camera + corder
- 8. oxbridge**
a) oxford + cambridge b) oxford + bridge c) oxford + camb d) oxford + cambric
- 9. electrocute**
a) electro + cute b) electro + execute c) etectro + ex d) etectro + execution
- 10. edutainment**
a) education + entertain b) education + tainment
c) education + entertainment d) edu + tainment

Answers									
1. b	2. d	3. c	4. c	5. b	6. a	7. c	8. a	9. b	10. c

Self - Evaluation

Choose the right combination for the blended word.

1. **newscast**
a) news + cast b) news + broad c) news + broadcast d) new+broadcast **Ans:**
2. **smog**
a) smoke + fog b) smo + fog c) smoke + forgs d) sumo + fog **Ans:**

3. **telex**
 a) teleprint + exchange
 c) teleprinter + exchange
 b) teleprinter + change
 d) tele + exchange
 Ans:
4. **agronomy**
 a) agri + economy
 c) agriculture + nomy
 b) agricultrue + eco
 d) agriculture + economy
 Ans:
5. **melodrama**
 a) melo + drama
 c) melody + drama
 b) melod + drama
 d) melodi + drama
 Ans:
6. **bit**
 a) bi + digit
 b) bin + digit
 c) binary + digit
 d) binar + digit
 Ans:
7. **moped**
 a) mot + cycle
 c) motor + pedal
 b) motor + cycle
 d) motor + pedal cycle
 Ans:
8. **mobike**
 a) mot + bike
 c) motor + bike
 b) motor + bicycle
 d) motor + pedal cycle
 Ans:
9. **motel**
 a) motor + hotel
 c) motorway + hot
 b) way + hotel
 d) motorway + hotel
 Ans:
10. **interpol**
 a) notional + police
 c) international + pol
 b) inter + police
 d) international + police
 Ans:
11. **fort night**
 a) fourteen + nights
 c) fort + nights
 b) forty + nights
 d) fourteen + nite
 Ans:
12. **hi - tech**
 a) high + technology
 c) higher + technology
 b) high + technique
 d) higher + techniques
 Ans:
13. **mobike**
 a) motor + bike
 c) mob + bike
 b) motorway + bike
 d) mobile + bike
 Ans:
14. **moped**
 a) motor + cycle
 c) motor way + pedal
 b) motor + pedal cycle
 d) motor + pedal
 Ans:
15. **lecdem**
 a) lec + demo
 c) lect + demonstration
 b) lecture + demo
 d) lecture + demonstration
 Ans:

16. **medicare**a) medical + care b) medicine + care c) medical + careful d) medi + care Ans: 17. **pixel**a) pic + element b) picture + element c) picture + elective d) pic + elective Ans: 18. **fantabulous**a) fanta + fabulous b) fantasia + tubulous c) fantastic + fabulous d) fan + tabulous Ans: 19. **infotech**a) information + technology b) inform + technology
c) inform + tech d) infor + technician Ans: 20. **edusat**a) education + satiation b) education + satanic
c) educate + satellite d) education + satellite Ans:

PART - I**17. DEFINITION OF WORDS****Mark : 1**

- ◇ There are many words in English which need some explanation or definition to understand the meaning.
- ◇ Some fall under phobias and study of some particular areas. Some words which need special attention to understand the meaning are given below.
- ◇ List of some common Phobias. A phobia is a type of anxiety disorder, defined by a persistent and excessive fear of an object or situation. The phobia typically results in a rapid onset of fear.

Achluophobia	Fear of darkness	Hemophobia	Fear of blood
Acrophobia	Fear of heights	Herpetophobia	Fear of reptiles
Aichmophobia	Fear of needles or pointed objects	Hydrophobia	Fear of water
Anginophobia	Fear of angina or choking	Hypochondria	Fear of illness
Anthropophobia	Fear of people or society	Iatrophobia	Fear of doctors
Arachnophobia	Fear of spiders	Insectophobia	Fear of insects
Arithmophobia	Fear of numbers	Microphobia	Fear of small things
Astraphobia	Fear of thunder and lightning	Mysophobia	Fear of dirt and germs
Ataxophobia	Fear of disorder or untidiness	Necrophobia	Fear of death or dead things
Atychiphobia	Fear of failure	Noctiphobia	Fear of the night
Autophobia	Fear of being alone	Obesophobia	Fear of gaining weight
Bacteriophobia	Fear of bacteria	Octophobia	Fear of the figure 8
Bathmophobia	Fear of stairs or steep slopes	Ophidiophobia	Fear of snakes

Batrachophobia	Fear of amphibians	Ornithophobia	Fear of birds
Bibliophobia	Fear of books	Pathophobia	Fear of disease
Cacophobia	Fear of ugliness	Pyrophobia	Fear of fire
Catagelophobia	Fear of being ridiculed	Scolionophobia	Fear of school
Claustrophobia	Fear of confined spaces	Sociophobia	Fear of social evaluation
Cynophobia	Fear of dogs	Somniphobia	Fear of sleep
Dystychiphobia	Fear of accidents	Technophobia	Fear of technology
Elurophobia	Fear of cats	Tonitrophobia	Fear of thunder
Entomophobia	Fear of insects	Verminophobia	Fear of germs
Equinophobia	Fear of horses	Wiccaphobia	Fear of witches and witchcraft
Gamophobia	Fear of marriage	Xenophobia	Fear of strangers or foreigners
Glossophobia	Fear of speaking in public	Zoophobia	Fear of animal

Words to mean study of some area.

- ◇ For example, 'biology' can be broken down into 'bio' and 'ology' - the study of life.
- ◇ Likewise, herpetology is the study of reptiles and amphibians, known as 'herps'.
- ◇ These studies can be of all sorts of things and there are hundreds of '-ology' words that describe what people do.

anthology	- collection literary passages
anthropology	- science of the origins and social relationships of humans
apology	- an expression of regret at having caused trouble for someone
archeology	- the branch of anthropology that studies prehistoric people
astrology	- divination by the positions of the planets and sun and moon
biology	- the science that studies living organisms
chronology	- an arrangement of events in time
ecology	- the environment as it relates to living organisms
entomology	- the branch of zoology that studies insects
epidemiology	- science dealing with the transmission and control of disease
etiology	- cause of a disease
etymology	- history of a word
cryptology	- study of codes
genealogy	- the study or investigation of ancestry and family history
geology	- science of the history of the earth as recorded in rocks
ichthyology	- the branch of zoology that studies fishes
ornithology	- the study of birds
meteorology	- the earth science dealing with phenomena of the atmosphere
morphology	- the study of the structure of animals and plants

mythology	- the body of stories associated with a culture or institution
oncology	- the study and treatment of tumors
pathology	- the branch of medical science that studies diseases
philology	- the humanistic study of language and literature
physiology	- the science dealing with the functioning of organisms
psychology	- the science of mental life
sociology	- the study and classification of human societies
technology	- the practical application of science to commerce or industry
theology	- the rational and systematic study of religion

Some miscellaneous words.

pedant	- one who shows off book learning
philistine	- one who is indifferent to aesthetic values
plagiarist	- a writer who steals from the writings of another
philanthropist	- one who loves mankind and donates liberally
polyglot	- one who speaks many languages
pseudonym	- a fictitious name used by a writer / poet
scape goat	- a person who is made to bear the blame of others
spendthrift	- one who spends extravagantly
stoic	- one who is indifferent to pleasure and pain
insecticide	- something used to kill insects
regicide	- killing a member of a royal family
infanticide	- the killing of an infant
introvert	- one who is unwilling to express opinions
conservative	- one who prefers traditional values
kleptomania	- a strong desire to steal
genocide	- killing of people
patricide	- killing of father
matricide	- killing of mother
homicide	- killing of another person
optimist	- one who has a positive outlook
pessimist	- one who has a negative outlook
anarchist	- one who does not believe in government
ascetic	- one who practises physical hardships for spiritual gains
emigrant	- one who leaves a country to live in another
epicure	- one who is fond of good food
feminist	- one who champions the cause of woman
glutton	- one who eats too much
hedonist	- one who believes in the philosophy of life for pleasure
humanitarian	- one who sympathizes with and serves the people

immigrant	- a foreigner who comes to stay in a country
intelligentsia	- class of people regarded as the enlightened
misanthrope	- one who hates mankind
missionary	- one who works with a spirit of service
misogynist	- one who hates women
oligarchy	- a government by a few
pacifist	- one who opposes use of force, war etc
parasite	- one who lives at the expense of others
pyromania	- one who has excessive desire to see fire
teetotaler	- one who abstains from taking strong drinks
turncoat	- one who changes his party
versatile	- one who possesses several talents
veteran	- one who has long experience in any field
upstart	- one who suddenly rises from low to high ranks
sadist	- a person who derives pleasure by causing pain
dunce	- a stupid person
narcissism	- abnormal and excessive love for oneself
silhouette	- dark outline against a light background
mesmerism	- process of drawing some one's attention by hypnotism

Textual Exercises

Page 148,149

Match the -ics words with their appropriate meanings. You can make use of a dictionary.

S.No.	Words	Meanings	Answer
1.	Linguistics	the scientific study of a language	1
2.	Numismatics	the study of principles of beauty	8
3.	Electro Dynamics	the study of speech sounds	10
4.	Phonetics	the study of genes	3
5.	Aesthetics	the study of analysing information shown in numbers	2
6.	Genetics	the study of government and using power in public life	4
7.	Statistics	the study of building and flying air-craft	5
8.	Politics	the study of money and coins	6
9.	Aeronautics	the study of processing data for storage and retrieval	7
10.	Informatics	the study of the way that electric currents and magnetic fields affect each other	9

Identify the words that mean the following.

Page 149,150

- | | | | |
|----------------|---------------|----------------|------------|
| • indigenous | myriad | • antiquity | aesthetics |
| • conservative | indescribable | • universality | secular |

- | | |
|--|----------------------|
| 1. This is something that is related to ancient time. | <u>antiquity</u> |
| 2. The word that describes pleasing in appearance. | <u>aesthetics</u> |
| 3. Things that are not specifically religious. | <u>secular</u> |
| 4. The word to mention a large number. | <u>myriad</u> |
| 5. This describes something which is produced or belongs to a particular region. | <u>indigenous</u> |
| 6. The thing that cannot be described. | <u>indescribable</u> |
| 7. This one is something which cannot come out of tradition. | <u>conservative</u> |
| 8. The quality of existing or involving everywhere. | <u>universality</u> |

Exercise with Answer

Choose the right definition for the given term.

- parasite:**

a) one who lives at the expense of others	b) one who helps others
c) one who is in the good book of others	d) one who is unfaithful
- polyglot:**

a) one who knows many theories	b) one who knows many languages
c) one who knows many people	d) one who know many subjects
- altiphobia:**

a) fear of attitude	b) fear of altitude	c) fear of gratitude	d) fear of people
---------------------	---------------------	----------------------	-------------------
- epicure:**

a) one who is fond of good food	b) one who is fond of good taste
c) one who is fond of books	d) one who is fond of countries
- regicide:**

a) killing a member of a society	b) killing a member of a gang
c) killing a member of a community	d) killing a member of a royal family
- hydrophobia:**

a) fear of dogs	b) fear of wolves	c) fear of water	d) fear of rivers
-----------------	-------------------	------------------	-------------------
- tyrant:**

a) a dictator	b) a democrat	c) a republican	d) a conservative
---------------	---------------	-----------------	-------------------
- pedant:**

a) one who is humble	b) one who is simple
c) one who shows off book learning	d) one who believes in practice
- xenophobia:**

a) fear of heights	b) fear of neighbours
c) fear of foreign people	d) fear of friends
- turn coat:**

a) one who uses coats	b) one who does not like coats
c) one who changes his party	d) one who joins the party

Answers

1. a	2. b	3. b	4. a	5. d	6. c	7. a	8. c	9. c	10. c
------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	-------

Self - Evaluation

Choose the right definition for the given term.

1. 'kleptomania'

- a) excessive desire to steal
c) excessive desire to store

- b) excessive desire to eat
d) excessive desire to play

Ans:

2. 'glutton'

- a) one who eats too much
c) one who loves many books

- b) one who buys many things
d) one who cooks well

Ans:

3. 'claustrophobia'

- a) fear of enclosed space
c) fear of strangers

- b) fear of open space
d) fear of darkness

Ans:

4. 'pyromania'

- a) excessive desire to go out
c) excessive desire to set fire

- b) excessive desire to watch
d) excessive desire to play with fire

Ans:

5. 'plagiarist'

- a) one who steals other's writings
c) one who steals jewels

- b) one who steals other's pens
d) one who steals books

Ans:

6. 'oligarchy'

- a) a government by the rich
c) a government by a few

- b) a government by the poor
d) a government by many

Ans:

7. 'optimist'

- a) one who has a positive outlook
c) one who has a religious belief

- b) one who has a negative out look
d) one who has no religious belief

Ans:

8. 'feminist'

- a) one who dislikes woman
c) one who champions the cause of woman

- b) one who dislike man
d) one who is against the society

Ans:

9. 'philanthropist'

- a) one who donates liberally
c) one who spends money

- b) one who saves money
d) one who amasses wealth

Ans:

10. 'artisan'

- a) a person who does skilled work
c) a person who paints pictures

- b) a person who acts in films
d) a person who draws pictures

Ans:

11. 'bibliophile'

- a) a reader of stories
c) a lover of trees

- b) a lover of bees
d) a lover of books

Ans:

12. 'misogynist'

- a) a hater of women
c) a hater of marriage

- b) a hater of men
d) hater of ceremonies

Ans:

13. 'ornithologist'

- a) one who studies diseases
c) one who studies earthquakes

- b) one who studies insects
d) one who studies birds

Ans:

14. 'meteorologist'

- a) one who studies atmosphere and weather
c) one who studies language

- b) one who studies stars
d) one who studies the history of nations

Ans:

15. 'geology'

- a) study of stars and sky

- b) study of life of animals

- c) study of history of the earth as recorded in rocks

- d) study of planets

Ans:

PART - I

18. POLITE ALTERNATIVES

Mark : 1

Euphemism

- ◇ The term 'euphemism' refers to polite, indirect expressions that replace words and phrases considered harsh and impolite, or which suggest something unpleasant.
- ◇ Euphemism is an idiomatic expression, which loses its literal meanings and refers to something else, in order to hide its unpleasantness.

No.	Words		Euphemism
1.	fired	–	early opportunity for retirement
2.	losing money	–	temporary negative growth
3.	used vehicle	–	preowned vehicle
4.	deaf	–	aurally challenged
5.	died	–	passed away, breathed his last, expired
6.	fat	–	full figured
7.	short	–	vertically challenged
8.	stupid	–	intellectually challenged
9.	house wife	–	home maker
10.	blind	–	visually challenged
11.	slow learners	–	late bloomers
12.	face wrinkles	–	laugh lines
13.	toilet	–	rest room
14.	unemployed	–	between jobs
15.	mental illness	–	lost marbles

16.	old people	–	over the hill, senior citizens
17.	vomit	–	blow chunks
18.	poor	–	underprivileged, economically backward, in the low incomes level
19.	genocide	–	ethnic cleansing
20.	accidental deaths	–	collateral damage
21.	euthanize	–	put to sleep
22.	abortion	–	pregnancy termination
23.	firing someone	–	letting someone go
24.	homeless	–	on the streets
25.	jail	–	correctional facility
26.	prison camp	–	relocation center
27.	cheap	–	economical
28.	broke	–	negative cash flow
29.	homeless	–	urban outdoorsman
30.	jobless	–	embarkingon a journey of self-discovery
31.	go to the toilet	–	powder your nose
32.	undertaker	–	mortician
33.	fat or overweight	–	big boned
34.	heavy or overweight	–	portly
35.	bald	–	moon landing
36.	handicapped or disabled	–	differently abled
37.	beating with a care	–	corporal punishment
38.	not smart	–	one sandwich short of picnic
39.	late	–	chronologically challenged
40.	liar	–	economical with the truth
41.	death penalty	–	capital punishment

Exercise with Answer

Substitute the underlined word with the proper polite expression.

- The business man was sorry for losing his money.
 - temporary negative growth
 - negative growth
 - losing life
 - chance for next chance
- My friend was very short for his age.
 - height challenged
 - vertical fall
 - vertically challenged
 - short in sight
- My father was waiting to buy a used vehicle.
 - others' vehicle
 - old vehicle
 - cheap vehicle
 - preowned vehicle

4. My sister vomited in the night.
a) watered out b) blow chunks c) spat out d) blow biscuits
5. The manger was not satisfied with his work so he fi red him.
a) let him go b) sent him out c) gave him chance d) took his decision
6. Because of some serious problem she had to undergo abortion.
a) pregnancy stopped b) pregnancy operated
c) pregnancy termination d) pregnancy failure
7. I bought some cheap shirts.
a) uncostly b) economical c) expensive d) not costly
8. She is a fat lady.
a) bulky b) obese c) heavy weight d) full figured
9. My mother is a house wife.
a) home maker b) house keeper c) home keeper d) house maker
10. Raja lost his job so now he is jobless.
a) On the street b) has nothing to do
c) embarking on a journey of self-discovery d) waiting to find out his talents

Answers									
1. a	2. c	3. d	4. b	5. a	6. c	7. b	8. d	9. a	10. c

Self - Evaluation

Substitute the underlined word with the proper polite expression.

1. My neighbour died yesterday after a short illness.
a) left the place b) breathed his last
c) killed himself d) family felt sorry **Ans :**
2. I met a blind man who was very intelligent.
a) visually challenged b) vertically challenged
c) aurally challenged d) orally challenged **Ans :**
3. Raja was a slow learner in his school days.
a) poor in studies b) back bencher
c) failed in many classes d) late bloomer **Ans :**
4. He wanted to go to toilet before the party.
a) lavatory b) paper hole c) rest room d) inside place **Ans :**
5. Many old people were living near my house.
a) senior citizens b) ready to leave the place
c) aged d) many places to travel **Ans :**
6. He is unemployed for many years.
a) without job b) wasted his time c) trying for job d) between jobs **Ans :**

7. **The thief was sent to jail for three years.**
a) confinement
b) correctional facility
c) keep him away
d) kept aloof from crowd
Ans :
8. **My father is completely bald.**
a) without hair
b) head shining
c) moon landing
d) sun reflection
Ans :
9. **The old man suffered from mental illness.**
a) lost marbles
b) last marbles
c) insane
d) out of mind
Ans :
10. **The murderer was given death penalty.**
a) hanging till death
b) last punishment
c) ceased to live
d) capital punishment
Ans :
11. **The political party leaders are accused of genocide.**
a) killing many
b) killing one particular group
c) ethnic cleansing
d) cleaning a group of people
Ans :
12. **My neighbour is a liar; he gives trouble to all the people around.**
a) away from truth all the time
b) economical with the truth
c) never thinks of telling the truth
d) far from truth
Ans :
13. **Vinod is not smart to understand things easily.**
a) one sandwich short of picnic
b) not anywhere closer to sandwich
c) little away from the real sense
d) never try to concentrate on things
Ans :
14. **He is very poor so he could not continue his studies.**
a) beneath the privilege
b) far away from money
c) under pressure
d) economically backward
Ans :
15. **Stray dogs are being euthanised.**
a) put to sleep
b) killed
c) pushed to death
d) losing life
Ans :
16. **Many poor people are homeless in India.**
a) on the platform
b) on the street
c) moneyless
d) careless
Ans :
17. **We were sorry to know about his accidental death.**
a) unfortunate death
b) unexpected death
c) collateral damage
d) family damaged
Ans :
18. **The businessman lost his business and totally broke.**
a) stopped the inflow of money
b) difficult to get back to business
c) positive look at the business
d) negative cash flow
Ans :
19. **My friend was handicapped from his birth.**
a) differently abled
b) lame
c) cannot use his limb
d) difficult
Ans :
20. **She went to the toilet to relive herself.**
a) went to be free
b) powder her nose
c) free from tension
d) bathroom
Ans :

PART - I**19. PHRASAL VERBS****Mark : 1**

- ◇ Phrasal verbs, also called multi-word verbs are idiomatic expressions, combining verbs and prepositions to make new verbs whose meaning is often not obvious from the dictionary definitions of the individual words.
- ◇ They are widely used in both written and spoken English, and new ones are formed all the time as they are a flexible way of creating new terms. For example:
 - *She has always **looked down** on me.*
- ◇ For instance, in the example, the phrasal verb 'to look down on someone' doesn't mean that you are looking down from a higher place at someone who is below you; it means that you think that you are better than someone.

Phrasal Verbs	Meanings	Phrasal Verbs	Meanings
take over	assume charge	see over	inspect a place carefully
take off	leave the ground	see to	attend
go about	do as a routine	see about	deal with
went out	stopped	keep away	not to go near
go on	continue without changing	keep up, keep on	continue
took to	developed an attachment	keep off	avoid contact
take on	undertake some responsibility	look out	be alert and watchful
take after	resemble	look over	inspect
go against	act against somebody	look after	take care of
go ahead	proceed	look into	investigate
go by	pass	pick on	criticize
go through	examine closely in order to find something	pick up	improve
break in	interrupt	pick over	check carefully
break out	escape	pick out	choose
break off	stop abruptly	pick off	remove
break up	put an end; separate	pull up	bringing a vehicle to a halt
call upon	invite	pull back	withdraw
call up	recall	pull through	recover from an illness
call for	require	stand by	be ready for action
call off	cancel	stand in for	take some body's place
call on	visit	stand out	better than others
cut in	interrupt	give up	avoid
cut off	separate	give away	distribute

cut short	reduce	give in	surrender/yield
cut up	divide into small pieces	pull back	withdraw
wait around	stay at a place impatiently	stand in for	on behalf
wait behind	stay at a place especially to meet someone	pick out	select
wait on	attend to someone by serving food	keep off	stand away
wait up	not going to bed until someone returns home		

Textual Exercises

Page 117

Give the meanings of the following phrasal verbs and frame sentences using them.

- ◇ **cut off** – to remove something by cutting
The branch was **cut off** from the main tree.
- ◇ **come upon** – meet someone by chance
I **came upon** my English teacher in Chennai.
- ◇ **put out** – stop something burning
The firefighters **put out** the fire.
- ◇ **draw up** – stop
A taxi **drew up** outside the hotel.
- ◇ **pass out** – to something to each member of a group.
The examiner **passed out** the question paper to all the students.
- ◇ **take off** – start flying; remove clothing
The flight **took off** at the right time.
As soon as I reached my house I **took off** my coat.
- ◇ **turn away** – refuse permission
The reporters who came to interview the Prime Minister were **turned away**.
- ◇ **stand by** – help someone who is in difficulty, to be ready
My friends **stood by** me all the time.
A boat was **standing by** in case of emergency.
- ◇ **bank on** – depend on
The whole team is **banking on** him to win the match.

Given below are the phrasal verbs with their meanings.

Use the given phrasal verbs in sentences of your own.

Page 118

- | | | |
|-----------|---|-----------------|
| turn on | - | to open |
| took over | - | take lead |
| set off | - | start a journey |
| put off | - | postpone |

1. My manager **turned on** a new account in the bank.
2. The son **took over** the company from his father.
3. During our last summer we **set off** to Ooty.
4. The match was **put off** due to rain.

Given below are some Phrasal Verbs which are frequently used in connection with travelling.

Guess the meaning and match.

Page 118

No.	Phrasal Verbs	Meanings	Answers
1.	see off	start off / to begin a journey	2
2.	stop over	to go to station or airport to say good bye to some one	3
3.	set off	to stay at a place for a short period of time when travelling to another place	1
4.	get in	leave a bus or train etc.	7
5.	get off	to go away from home for a vacation	4
6.	get on	arrive inside train, bus etc.	6
7.	get away	enter a bus, train place	5
8.	check in	pay the bill when leaving a hotel	9
9.	check out	arrive and register at airport or hotel	8

Exercise with Answer

Fill the blanks with suitable phrasal verb.

- I felt sorry to see most of the paint _____ before the main party.
a) wore off b) wore by c) wore in d) wore on
- Our dog _____ when we were searching everywhere for it.
a) turned by b) turned on c) turned up d) tuned on
- I _____ the offer because I don't want to move out of this place.
a) turned on b) turned down c) twisted d) pleaded for
- We _____ of petrol on the way.
a) ran for b) ran in c) ran by d) ran out
- I don't think I can _____ three small children in the car.
a) put with b) put up c) put up with d) put in
- The management will _____ the theft seriously.
a) look into b) look at c) look after d) look out
- _____ while I buy my coat and shoes.
a) hang in b) hang on c) hang out d) hang for
- Jason _____ his trip to Delhi because of bad weather.
a) called off b) called up c) called in d) called on
- My mother walked out of the room when my father _____ sports.
a) brought in b) brought out c) brought for d) brought up
- The racing car _____ after it crashed into the fence.
a) blew on b) blew up c) blew in d) blew down

Answers									
1. a	2. c	3. b	4. d	5. c	6. a	7. b	8. a	9. d	10. b

Self - Evaluation

Fill the blanks with suitable phrasal verb.

1. We _____ our trip until January because of the hurricane.
a) put on b) put in c) put of d) put off Ans :
2. Ever since Sunder stole that chocolate bar the shop keeper has _____ him.
a) looked at b) looked on c) looked down on d) looked down Ans :
3. Please _____ while I transfer you to the Sales Department.
a) hold for b) hold on c) hold at d) hold in Ans :
4. My father asked me to _____ my purse.
a) hand in b) hand on c) hand over d) hand up Ans :
5. Please _____ and complete the assignment in time.
a) go ahead b) go at c) go for d) go with Ans :
6. My friend didn't want to go to the movie but he finally _____.
a) gave up b) gave for c) gave in d) gave down Ans :
7. I need to _____ how to fit the piano and the bookshelf in this room.
a) figure in b) figure for c) figure at d) figure out Ans :
8. I might _____ for tea sometime this week.
a) drop out b) drop in c) drop down d) drop at Ans :
9. It's time to _____ all of these old records.
a) do away with b) do with c) do away d) do away for Ans :
10. My friend _____ while I was dancing in my room.
a) cut off b) cut at c) cut on d) cut in Ans :
11. In the development of technology we have to _____ with other developed countries.
a) catch up b) catch in c) catch on d) catch for Ans :
12. We _____ you last night but you weren't home.
a) called for b) called in c) called on d) called about Ans :
13. She _____ her article from the magazine.
a) cut out b) cut in c) cut up d) cut at Ans :
14. _____ stirring until the liquid comes to a boil.
a) keep up b) keep on c) keep in d) keep at Ans :
15. I'm _____ a red dress for Deepawali.
a) looking at b) looking in c) looking for d) asking for Ans :

PART - II**1. REPORT THE DIALOGUE****Marks : 2**

Report the following dialogue.

- ◇ In order to report a dialogue, one should be well-versed in changing sentences from Direct Speech to Indirect Speech.
- ◇ Of course, we need not reproduce the actual words of the speaker exactly.
- ◇ We are more concerned with the sense of the utterance than the literal repetition of the words.
- ◇ There are several differences between a sentence with direct speech and a sentence with indirect speech.
- ◇ We don't need to use quotation marks with indirect speech.
- ◇ We have to change the tense of the verb.
- ◇ We have to change the pronouns, first person and second person and adverbs of time.

When the utterance of the speaker is a statement we use the **reporting verbs** - say, tell.

The **conjunction** used is - **that**. In order to preserve the original tone of the speaker.

'say' or 'tell' can be replaced with:

suggest, agree, mutter, admit, insist, whisper, boast, state, remark, claim, object, protest, etc.

- He said, "I can speak four language". - He boasted that he could speak four languages.
- "Let's go out for a walk," - She suggested going out for a walk.
- "That mobile is mine", - He claimed that that mobile was his.
- "Yes, I took the mobile", - He admitted that he had taken the mobile.
- "You can't arrest me", - He protested that they could not arrest him.
- "You shouldn't take my laptop" - He objected to my taking his laptop.

Some rules to be followed for reporting a dialogue.

CHANGES IN THE TENSE		
Reporting Verb	Reported Verb	Change
Past tense	Present tense	Past tense
Past tense	Past tense	Past perfect
Past tense	Present perfect	Past perfect
Past tense	will	would
	shall	would
	can	could
	may	might
	must/could/would/should/might	no change
Present tense	whatever tense	no change

Change in word or phrase of time.

- | | | | |
|------------|----------------|--------------|----------------------|
| • now | → then | • yesterday | → the day before |
| • here | → there | • last night | → the night before |
| • ago | → before | • this | → that |
| • thus | → so | • these | → those |
| • today | → that day | • here | → there |
| • tomorrow | → the next day | • next week | → the following week |

Linker or conjunction.

- Assertive or Statement – that
- Interrogative or question
 - Yes / No question – whether or if
 - 'Wh' question – no linker
 - Imperative – to / not to
 - Exclamatory – change the sentence into assertive with the linker, 'that'

- ◇ We change the tense form of the Reported speech if the Reporting verb is in Past Tense.
- ◇ There is no need to change the tense for of the reporting speech if the Reporting verb is present or future tense.
 - He says, "I am unwell."
 - He says that he is unwell.
 - He said, "I am unwell"
 - He said that he was unwell.

Statement

- ◇ The boy said to his friend, "I am waiting for you here now."
The boy told his friend that he was waiting for him there then.
- The blocked items are changed items.
- ◇ Rosy said, "I have a habit of reading before I go to bed".
Rosy said that she had a habit of reading before she went to bed.
- ◇ David said, 'Here is the pen I borrowed yesterday, John.'
David said to John that there was the pen he had borrowed the previous day.

Questions**Yes / No Questions:**

- ◇ My friend said, "Are they coming with us?"
My friend asked me whether they were coming with us.
- ◇ I said, "Were they angry with you?"
I asked him whether they had been angry with him.
- ◇ She said to me, "Is Tom at home?"
She asked me if Tom was at home.
- ◇ Sarah said to her mother, "Can the milkman bring milk in this heavy rain?"
Sarah asked her mother if the milkman could bring milk in that heavy rain.

Do / Does / Did Questions:

When using;

do, does (present tense) - the main verb converts into the past (does / do go - went)

did (past tense) - the main verb converts into past perfect. (did go - had gone)

- ◇ “Does David study late at night?” said Sonia.
Sonia asked me whether David studied late at night.
- ◇ Ravi said, “Do college students use cellphones?”
Ravi asked me whether college students used cellphones.

W/H Questions:

These questions begin with a question word Who, What, When, Why, Where, How, How long. While changing such a question into reported form we do not use any conjunction. We simply invert the word order (Verb + Subject is changed into Subject + Verb).

Do not use if/whether in W/H Questions:

- ◇ She said to me, “What do you want?”
She asked me what I wanted.
- ◇ My neighbour said, “When did the men catch the stray dogs?”
My neighbour asked me when the men had caught the stray dogs.
- ◇ My friend said, “Which colour will you choose?”
My friend asked me which colour I would choose.

Command / Order / Imperative Sentence:

- ◇ We use the conjunction ‘to’.
- ◇ When the command is a negative one beginning with “Don’t” we change it to ‘not to’.
- The Captain said, “Get ready to board the ship.”
The Captain commanded his sailors to get ready to board the ship.
- The Judge said to the culprit, “Tell me the truth.”
The Judge ordered the culprit to tell him the truth.
- Headmaster said to the students, “Don’t copy in the examination.”
Headmaster asked the students not to copy in the examination.
- Robert said to me, “Please post these letters.”
Robert requested me to post those letters.

Exclamations

Exclamations can be reported with adverbs of manner - exclaimed with joy / exclaimed with sorrow.

- ◇ Reporting Verb: exclaimed with (emotion)
- ◇ The exclamation should be changed into a statement.
- ◇ Use suitable emotions to the exclamation.
- Rosy said to David, “How wonderfully you sang!”
Rosy exclaimed with happiness that David had sung wonderfully.

- The reporter said, "Alas! Many lives have been lost due to tsunami."
The reporter exclaimed sadly that many lives had been lost due to tsunami.
- The grandmother said, "May you meet with success wherever you go."
The grandmother blessed her grandson that he might meet with success wherever he went.

Textual Exercises

Page 15

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. I am very busy. | - Raja said that he was very busy. |
| 2. I have completed my work. | - Satya said that she had completed her work. |
| 3. I don't like to go out. | - Johnson said that he did not like to go out. |
| 4. I have just come back from Chennai. | - Rehana said that she had just come back from Chennai. |
| 5. I am learning English. | - Jayan said that he was learning English. |
| 6. I bought a pen yesterday. | - Madhu said that he had bought a pen the previous day. |
| 7. We will go for shopping tomorrow. | - Joseph and Mary said that they would go for shopping the next day. |
| 8. We can't attend the party. | - Afsar and Ayesha said that they could not attend the party. |
| 9. How are you? | - Satish asked how he was |
| 10. I am fine. Thank you. | - Victor said that he was fine and he thanked him |

Read the following dialogue and complete the report in the space provided.

Page 15

- a. Priya : Where are you going?
Vijay : I am going to the Railway station.
Priya : Why are you going there?
Vijay : I want to receive my uncle who is coming from Bangalore.
Priya asked Vijay : (a) **where he was going?**
Vijay replied : (b) **that he was going to the Railway station.**
Priya further inquired : (c) **why he was going there?**
Vijay stated that : (d) **he wanted to receive his uncle who was coming from Bangalore.**
- b. Teacher : Why are you late?
Divya : I missed the bus.
Teacher : You should have reached the bus stop on time.
Divya : My grandmother is ill. So, I had to take her to the doctor.
Teacher : I am sorry. What ails her?
Divya : She has high fever.

The teacher asked Divya why she was late. Divya replied that (a) **she had missed the bus.** The teacher told her that (b) **she should have reached the bus stop in time.** Divya said that her grandmother was ill so she had to take her to the doctor. The teacher felt sorry and further asked her (c) **what ailed her.** Divya said that she (d) **had** high fever.

Rewrite the following passage in indirect speech.

Page 16

Pradeep got out of bed with much excitement. "It is going to be a lovely sunny day," he remarked to his sister Varshini.

“Just let me sleep a bit longer, Pradeep,” Varshini begged, “and since you are feeling so enthusiastic,” she suggested, “Why don’t you go and help mother in cooking?”

“Sure, I will”, said Pradeep. “Can I help you mum?”, he said to his mother.

“Yes of course. There are idlis and vadas on the dining table. Have your breakfast.”

“Thank you mum, I’ll surely help you by eating them.”

Answer:

Pradeep got out of bed with much excitement. He remarked to his sister, Varshini that it was going to be a lovely sunny day. Varshini begged him to let her sleep a bit longer. She suggested that he should go and help mother in cooking since he was feeling so enthusiastic. Pradeep said that he would and asked the mother whether he would help her. She said that he could and continued that there were idlis and vadas on the table and asked him to have his breakfast. He thanked his mother and said that he would surely help her by eating them.

Exercise with Answer

1. Customer : Can I have a pack of biscuits?
Shop keeper : Of course you can. Select your brand from the shelf.
2. Raja : What are you doing here, Senthil? I haven’t see you for a month.
Senthil : I was in Chennai and I came back yesterday.
3. The pilot : Dear passengers the plane will land in Delhi at 9 a.m.
A passenger to a co passenger : How long will it take to go out of the airport?
4. Gowtam : Hi, Vinoth, how are you? When did you come from Delhi?
Vinoth : I am fine. I came back one week back.
5. Teacher : Finish your homework today. Tomorrow I will check them.
Sam : Sorry mam, I will go to my grandmother’s place today. Can I submit my work day after tomorrow?
6. The motorist : Can you direct me to the post office?
I : Go straight and turn left. You will find the post office.
7. Peter : Will you please lend your motorcycle for two hours?
Ravi : You can take it. Why do you need this?
8. Tourist : How can I reach Mahabalipuram?
Guide : You can drive along the East Coast Road. The road is smooth and in 90 minutes you will reach Mahabalipuram
9. Amutha : Are you interested in sports?
Kumar : I am interested and I practice a lot.
10. I : Why do you feel sorry?
The boy : Alas! My dog is dead.

Answers:

1. Customer asked the shop keeper whether he could take a pack of biscuits. The shopkeeper said that he could and asked him to select his brand from the shelf.
2. Raja asked Senthil what he was doing there and said that he had not seen him for a month. Senthil said that he had been in Chennai and he had come back the previous day.
3. The pilot informed the passengers that the plane would land in Delhi at 9 a.m. A passenger asked his co passenger how long it would take to go out of the airport.
4. Gowtham asked Vinod how he was and when he had come from Delhi. Vinod said that he was fine and he had come back one week back.
5. Teacher asked Sam to finish his homework that day and said that he would check them the next day. Sam felt sorry and said that he would go to his grandmother's place that day. He asked her whether he could submit his work the day after the next.
6. The motorist asked me whether I could direct him to the post office. I asked him to go straight and turn left and said he would find the post office.
7. Peter requested Ravi whether he would lend his motorcycle for two hours. Ravi said that he could take it and asked him why he needed.
8. Tourist asked the guide how he could reach Mahabalipuram. The guide told the tourist that he he could drive along the East Coast road. It was smooth and in 90 minutes he would reach Mahabalipuram.
9. Amutha asked Kumar whether he was interested in sports. Kumar said that he was interested and he practised a lot.
10. I asked the boy why he felt sorry. The boy exclaimed sadly that his dog was dead.

Self - Evaluation

1. Teacher : Mani, why were you absent yesterday?
Mani : Yesterday I was suffering from cold sir. So I did not come.
2. Uma : I want to buy a computer. How much does this computer cost?
Salesman : Its costs £25000. I can give it to you for £24000.
3. Susila : When did you buy this table? It looks good.
Aruna : I bought this last month.
4. Kumar : I have come to you to borrow your note book.
David : Today I cannot give my note book. Tomorrow I will give it to you.
5. Doctor : What's your problem? You look very tired.
Aravind : I have severe stomach ache. I couldn't eat anything so I am tired.
6. Murthy : Have you ever visited Agra? How wonderful Taj is!
Sarathy : I have not visited Agra yet. I want to visit Taj.
7. Joseph : Good morning mam! I want to book two tickets to Mumbai.
Clerk : Good morning sir! When do you want to travel? Which class?

8. Vani : You did not attend the party. Where did you go?
I : I am sorry I went to Chennai to meet my sister.
9. Teacher : Tomorrow we will have test in English.
Vimal : Sir, tomorrow we will have two more tests. Will you please re-schedule the test?
10. Sheila : When will you complete your homework?
July : I cannot finish it today. I will finish it tomorrow.
11. Jane : Alas! I lost my purse.
Eliz : I am sorry to know that. Where did you lose it?
12. Sunder : I have really enjoyed my stay in this village. I can never forget this.
Aaron : I am happy to know that. You can come next year also.
13. Patient : Still I have fever. I have body pain also.
Nurse : Did you take the tablets in time?
14. Danny : Mom, where did you keep my bag? I cannot find it on my table.
Mother : You can find it in the same place where you kept it.
15. Shop keeper : Good morning sir! What do you want?
Kannan : I want to get a T shirt. Do you have branded T shirts?

PART - II**2. ACTIVE AND PASSIVE VOICE****Marks : 2****Active and Passive Voice**

- ◇ When the subject is in action we call the sentence as active voice. When the subject is passive we call the sentence as passive voice.
 - Eg: The Hunter killed the lion.
(Here the subject 'Hunter' is in the action of killing. So it is active voice)
The lion was killed by the hunter.
(Here the subject 'Lion' is not doing any action, the action is done on it. So it is passive voice)
- ◇ Active voice is used to give importance to the SUBJECT or doer.
 - Sita wrote a letter.
Importance is given to who wrote the letter.
- ◇ Passive voice is used to give importance to the receiver of the action or the action.
 - A letter was written by Sita.
Importance is given to the receiver of the action 'a letter'

Active form and Passive form of verbs

- Active form : wrote, taught
- Passive form : Be + past participle → Be + written → Be + taught

- The 'be' verb depends on the subject of the passive voice and the tense of the main verb.
- 'be' verbs : am, is, are, was, were, has been, have been, had been.

The 'be' verb changes according to the tense and number. Each tense and number has its own auxiliary ('be' verb). For example:

Tense	No.	Be verb	Examples
Present Simple	Singular	is	He writes a letter. A letter is written by him.
Present Simple	Plural	are	He writes few letters. Few letters are written by him.
Present Continuous	Singular	is being	He is writing a letter. A letter is being written by him.
Present Continuous	Plural	are being	He is writing few letters. Few letters are being by him.
Present Perfect	Singular	has been	He has written a letter. A letter has been written by him.
Present Perfect	Plural	have been	He has written few letters. Few letters have been written by him.
Past Simple	Singular	was	He wrote a letter. A letter was written by him.
Past Simple	Plural	were	He wrote few letters. Few letters were written by him.
Past Continuous	Singular	was being	He was writing a letter. A letter was being written by him.
Past Continuous	Plural	were being	He was writing few letters. Few letters were being written by him.
Past Perfect	Singular Plural	had been	He had written a/few letter(s). A/Few letter(s) had been written by him.
Future Simple	Singular Plural	will be	He will write a/few letter(s). A/Few letter(s) will be written by him.
Future Perfect	Singular Plural	will have been	He will have written a/few letter(s). A/Few letter(s) will have been written by him.

- ◇ We do not have passive voice for
 - Present Perfect Continuous, Past Perfect Continuous, Future continuous and Future Perfect Continuous.
- ◇ The modal auxiliaries will have 'be' along with them.
 - will – will be, would – would be, shall – shall be (it is used only when the subject of the passive voice is in I person), should – should be, may – may be, might – might be, must – must be, ought to – ought to be.

SUBJECT	OBJECT
I	me
We	us
He	him
She	her
They	them

(‘You and ‘It’ do not have separate forms)

- I bought a car. → A car was bought by me.
- He kicked the ball. → The ball was kicked by him.
- She closed the door. → The door was closed by her.
- We completed the work. → The work was completed by us.
- They won the match. → The match was won by them

a) Sentences with one object

- The clerk sent the parcel. – active
- The parcel was sent by the clerk. – passive
- He had locked the door before leaving the room. – active
- The door had been locked by him before leaving the room. – passive
- The girl was writing a letter to her mother. – active
- A letter was being written by the girl to her mother. – passive

b) Sentences with two objects

- He sends his mother letters regularly. – active
- Letters are sent by him to his mother regularly. – passive
- He has given her a book. – active
- A book has been given by him to her. – passive
- She is telling him a story. – active
- A story is being told by her to him. – passive

c) Sentences with modal auxiliary.

- He will complete the work in time. – active
- The work will be completed in time. – passive
- She may water the plants. – active
- The plants may be watered by her. – passive
- Special care should be taken to ‘shall be’ in passive voice.
 - Only when first person – I or We – comes as the subject in the passive voice we can use ‘shall be’.
 - Otherwise we should use only ‘will be’.
- I shall do the work. – active
- The work will be done by me. – passive
- He will meet me. – active
- I shall be met by him. – passive

d. Some unusual passive voice.

Imperatives

Shut the door.	– active
Let the door be shut.	– passive
Bring the book.	– active
Let the book be brought.	– passive

Interrogatives

Who broke the window?	– active
By whom was the window broken?	– passive
Who did the mistake?	– active
By whom was the mistake done?	– passive
Do you understand the meaning?	– active
Is the meaning understood by you?	– passive

Sentences with phrasal verbs

His friends laughed at him.	– active
He was laughed at by his friends.	– passive
He pointed at her.	– active
She was pointed at by him.	– passive

◇ The passive infinitive is made up of **to be** with a **past participle**.

- We are going to lock the doors at ten o' clock.
The doors are going **to be locked** at ten o' clock.
- You shouldn't have done that. They ought to punish you.
You shouldn't have done that. You ought **to be punished**.

Exercise with Answer

Change the voice of the following sentences.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Gita loves Savita. | - Savita is loved by Gita. |
| 2. The boys are helping the wounded man. | - The wounded man is being helped by the boys. |
| 3. The gate was opened by the watchman. | - The watchman opened the gate. |
| 4. She has been invited by them to the party. | - They have invited her to the party. |
| 5. People speak English all over the world. | - English is spoken by people all over the world. |
| 6. We left the place immediately. | - The place was left by us immediately. |
| 7. Your question has been answered. | - I have answered your questions. |
| 8. We will discuss the matter tomorrow. | - The matter will be discussed by us tomorrow. |
| 9. The rat has been killed by the cat. | - The cat has killed the rat. |
| 10. She received a parcel. | - A parcel was received by her. |

Self - Evaluation

Change the voice of the following sentences.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. The exercise is completed by the teacher. | 9. The president was elected by the people. |
| 2. Steven likes to play baseball. | 10. Did she do her duty? |
| 3. Football is played by the children. | 11. Give me the book. |
| 4. They are listening to their music. | 12. The tiger was chasing the deer. |
| 5. Coffee is sold by Marie. | 13. Few novels have been written by her. |
| 6. He lost his keys yesterday. | 14. Let the picture be painted. |
| 7. The computer is used by Patrick. | 15. She has learned her lessons. |
| 8. I will never forget the experience. | |

PART - II**3. CONDITIONAL CLAUSES****Marks : 2****Combine the given two sentences with 'if'**

- ◇ Conditional Sentences are also known as Conditional Clauses or If Clauses.
- ◇ They are used to express that the action in the main clause (without if) can only take place if a certain condition (in the clause with if) is fulfilled. There are four types of Conditional Sentence.

Example:

- If I find the address I will send the invitation.
- If I found the address I would send the invitation.
- If I had found the address I would have sent the invitation.
- If you drop a piece of wood in water it floats.

Types of conditional clauses**Type I – Open condition**

- ◇ Simple sentence is used in the if clause and modal verbs, will / shall / can / may is used in the main clause.
- ◇ It is for a possible condition with probable result in present tense.
 - If I find the address I will send the invitation.

Type II – Improbable or Hypothetical condition

- ◇ Simple past is used in if clause and main clause has would / could / might
- ◇ It is for a hypothetical condition with probable result.
 - If I found the address I would send the invitation.

Type III – Unfulfilled condition

- ◇ Past perfect is used in the if clause and main clause has would have / could have / might have + Past Participle

- ◇ It is for an unreal past condition with probable result in the past in past perfect tense.
 - If I had found the address I would have sent the invitation.

Zero type – IV

- ◇ It is for general truth in simple sentence.
 - If you drop a piece of wood in water it floats.

Textual Exercises

Page 124

Read the following sentences and fill in the blanks.

- a. If I were (be) a spider, I would weave (weave) webs.
- b. If Raj were (be) a sculptor, he would make (make) beautiful idols.
(or) If Raj is a sculptor he will make beautiful idols.
- c. If Mary had an umbrella, she would lend (lend) it to me.
- d. Rex would have played with me, if he had had (has) time.
- e. If I were you, I would accept (accept) this offer.
- f. We will select (select) story books for kids, if we allot time for storytelling.
- g. The Education Minister will visit (visit) our school tomorrow, if he goes by this way.
- h. You will be rewarded by the wise, if you stand (stand) for truth.
- i. If my mother knows (know) of my poor performance in the exam, she will not allow me to watch a movie.
- j. If I had won the lottery, I would have donated (donate) relief materials for the flood victims.

Rewrite the following sentences using 'If' without changing the meaning.

Page 125

eg: Unless you go for a walk regularly, you cannot reduce your weight. (Use 'If')
If you do not go for a walk regularly, you cannot reduce your weight.

- a. **Sindhu would not have won the world championship, unless she had not had single minded devotion.**
Sindhu would not have won the world championship, if she had not had single minded devotion.
- b. **You will not reach your goal, unless you chase your dream.**
You will not reach your goal, if you do not chase your dream.
- c. **Unless we plant more trees, we cannot save our planet.**
If we do not plant more trees, we cannot save our planet.
- d. **The rescue team would not have saved the victims unless they had received the call in time.**
The rescue team would not have saved the victims if they had not received the call in time.
- e. **The palace cannot be kept clean, unless we appoint more people.**
The palace cannot be kept clean, if we do not appoint more people.
- f. **The portraits would not have been so natural unless the artist had given his best.**
The portraits would not have been so natural if the artist had not given his best.
- g. **The manager would not have selected Nithiksha unless she exhibited good accounting skill.**
The manager would not have selected Nithiksha if she had not exhibited good accounting skill.
- h. **The policeman would not have arrested the man unless he had violated the rules.**
The policeman would not have arrested the man if he had not violated the rules.

- i. **Mr.Kunaal would not sponsor my higher education unless I studied well.**
Mr.Kunaal would not sponsor my higher education if I did not study well.
- j. **Kavin will not stop flying kites unless he understands the risk involved in it.**
Kavin will not stop flying kites if he does not understand the risk involved in it.
- k. **Tanya would not know the answer unless she referred to the answer key.**
Tanya would not know the answer if she did not refer to the answer key.
- l. **My village cannot achieve 100 % literacy rate, unless the elders of the village cooperate with the education department.**
My village cannot achieve 100 % literacy rate, if the elders of the village do not cooperate with the education department.
For this question two simple sentences will be given and we are expected to combine them into one sentence with 'if'.

Exercise with Answer

Combine the sentences with 'if'.

1. You go out with your friends. I watch football match on TV.
2. He gets that job. He earns a lot of money.
3. He tried harder. He reached his goal.
4. He wants to pass the test. He has to work harder.
5. You may meet him. Then please ask him to come over here.
6. You should work hard. Then you will get good marks.
7. You have to invite her. She will come.
8. Obey the rules. Otherwise, you will be persecuted.
9. I should study well. I will pass the exam.
10. The sun shines. We will walk into the town.
11. She may face some problems. She will consult us.
12. I came home earlier. I prepared dinner.
13. Tim and Tom were not old enough. They did not play in the hockey match.
14. He was my friend. I invited him for my birthday.
15. The boys did not take the bus to school. They did not reach in time.

Answers:

1. If you go out with your friends I will watch football match on TV.
2. If he gets that job he will earn a lot of money.
3. If he had not tried harder he would not have reached his goal.
4. If he wants to pass the test he will have to work harder.
5. If you meet him please ask him to come over here.
6. If you work hard you will get good marks.
7. If you invite her she will come.
8. If you do not obey the rules you will be persecuted.
9. If I study well I will pass the exam.
10. If the sun shines we will walk into the town.

11. If she faces some problems, she will consult us.
12. If I had not come home earlier I would not have prepared dinner.
13. If Tim and Tom had not been old enough they would have played in the hockey match.
14. If he had not been your friend I would not have invited him for my birthday.
15. If the boys had taken the bus to school they would have reached in time.

Self - Evaluation

Combine the sentences with 'if'.

1. You eat well. You are healthy. - _____
2. You press the button. The door opens. - _____
3. You water the plants. The plants do not perish. - _____
4. She needs a radio. She borrows mine. - _____
5. You waste water. You suffer. - _____
6. You lend money. I buy a new car. - _____
7. Naveen is late. He is punished. - _____
8. The bus breaks down. I am not able to attend classes. - _____
9. She hears the news. She is furious. - _____
10. You sit down. I conduct the enquiry. - _____
11. I had a type writer. I typed it. - _____
12. I knew his address. I gave it to him. - _____
13. He shaved often. He looked better. - _____
14. You had played for cheap popularity. You lost the match. - _____
15. The women of Asia wake up. The women of Asia will dazzle the world. - _____
16. I had the power. I swept them out of power. - _____
17. You come today. You finish the work. - _____
18. He plays well. He will get the championship award. - _____
19. They were tired. They would not play. - _____
20. I did not have money. I could not buy the dictionary. - _____
21. I go to Trivandrum. I visit the zoo. - _____
22. He plays well. He becomes the district champion. - _____
23. He refuses to listen. I can't do anything. - _____
24. You did not work hard. You did not pass. - _____
25. I don't have wings. I can't fly. - _____

PART - II**4. INVERSION OF CONDITIONAL CLAUSES****Marks : 2**

- ◇ Inversion of conditional clause happens in sentences where “if” is replaced by “had”, “were” and “should”.

Example for inversion of conditional clause :

- ◇ If I had known you before I could have told it to you.
Had I known you before I could have told it to you.
- ◇ If John were here I could talk to him.
Were John here I could talk to him.
- ◇ If you should ask me before I can complete the task.
Should you ask me before I can complete the task.
- ◇ If Jim had performed better he could have won the contest.
Had Jim performed better he could have won the contest.
- ◇ If you were here you could enjoy the program.
Were you here you could enjoy the program.
- ◇ If I had seen you before I could have given it to you.
Had I seen you before I could have given it to you.
- ◇ If you should come here in time you can met Jim.
Should you come here in time you can met Jim.

Exercise with Answer

Rewrite the sentence making an inversion in the conditional clause.

1. If you see John, please give him my best regards.
2. If you were to earn a huge salary, what would you do with the money?
3. If he hadn't squandered all his savings, he wouldn't have been poor now.
4. If she were to get the effect of the situation, she would definitely be devastated.
5. If you should need assistance, please let us know.
6. If he were selected for the job, he would go out and celebrate.
7. If I hadn't chosen to learn English, I wouldn't have done this exercise.
8. If it hadn't been so strange, I would have remembered it.
9. If I were in your shoes, I would tell her the truth.
10. If he were promoted, his salary would double.

Answers:

1. Should you see John please give him my best regards.
2. Were you to earn a huge salary, what would you do with the money?
3. Hadn't he squandered all his savings, he wouldn't have been poor now.
4. Were she to get the effect of the situation, she would definitely be devastated.
5. Should you need assistance, please let us know.
6. Were he selected for the job, he would go out and celebrate.

7. Hadn't I chosen to learn English, I wouldn't have done this exercise.
8. Hadn't it been so strange, I would have remembered it.
9. Were I in your shoes, I would tell her the truth.
10. Were he promoted, his salary would double.

Self - Evaluation

Rewrite the sentence making an inversion in the conditional clause.

1. If he remembers her name he will call her now.
2. If he had pushed the button the bell would have rung.
3. If he hadn't robbed the bank he would not have gone to prison.
4. If you should go to Bangalore you will find many MNC's.
5. If you had followed my advice you would not have been in trouble.
6. If Alex were not selfish he would help his friends.
7. If you should meet Lawrence please pass my wishes to him.
8. If she should call while I am away give her my phone number.
9. If Julia had watered the plants they would not have perished.
10. If I were you I would go to the doctor.
11. If she had paid her phone bill her mobile would not have been cut off.
12. If you should go to Agra you must see the Taj Mahal.
13. If he were not my best friend I would not forgive him.
14. If I should make a mistake they will fire me.
15. If you should need my help don't hesitate to phone me.
16. If they had played well they would have won the match.
17. If I were in Chennai I would surely meet you.
18. If he were the president he would provide better things for us.
19. If they had not secured the airport well something worse would have happened.
20. If you should need to reach me I will be in the conference hall.

PART - II

5. SIMPLE, COMPOUND, COMPLEX SENTENCES

Marks : 2

SIMPLE SENTENCE

- ◇ Simple sentence is a sentence with only one finite verb.
- ◇ It may be a short sentence or a long sentence.
 - The boy ran to school.
 - Being blind he could not cross the road.
 - How to find out the verb
- ◇ Two types of verbs: 1. 'be' verbs 2. action verbs.
- ◇ 'be' verbs are am, is, are, was, were and
- ◇ all the modal verbs with 'be' are 'will be' 'shall be', 'may be', 'can be', 'would be' etc.,

'be' verbs

- I am a teacher.
- He is my friend.
- You are my students.
- They were my class mates.

Action verbs

- He plays well.
- They read books.
- He studied with me.
- She went home.
- He will play well.
- You should read the book.
- They may come today.
- I can finish the work.

Action verbs - 'ing' form

- She is playing in the garden.
- They are looking at the picture.
- I was reading the news paper.
- I am working with him.
- She will be coming soon.
- They may be going to a movie today.

Perfect tense

- I have gone home.
- She has come from Chennai.
- They have asked me to help them.
- The train had left before I reached the station.

Passive verbs

- The tiger was killed by the hunter.
- The books were sold in the market.
- A letter was being written by her.
- The parcel will be sent to Chennai.
- The minister will be given a warm welcome.
- He is garlanded by the manager.

'ing' form not as verb

- Crossing the river we reached home.
- Walking on the grass is prohibited.
- Jumping over the wall the thief escaped.
- Singing a song he entered the class.

◇ The underlined words are not verbs.

◇ These 'ing' forms can be made into verbs by adding 'be' verbs with them.

- He was crossing the river.
- They were walking on the grass.
- The dog was jumping over the gate.
- She was singing well.

Now all the underlined words are verbs.

Infinitives - not verbs

- She wanted to go home.
- Standing at the corner he tried to cross the fence.
- They decided to finish the work in time.
- You should come back in time to do your work.

All the underlined words are not verbs; they are infinitives. (to+verb is not a verb)

'ing' forms and infinitives

If an 'ing' form of a verb comes in a sentence without a helping verb ('be' verb), it cannot be taken as finite verb.

- | | | | |
|------------|--------------|---------------|--------------|
| • going | - not a verb | • driving | - not a verb |
| • is going | - a verb | • was driving | - verb |
| • sitting | - not a verb | • playing | - not a verb |

- is sitting - a verb
 - am coming - a verb
 - will be writing - verb
- ◇ If the word 'to' comes before a verb, it is called infinitive and it cannot be taken as finite verb.
eg: to go, to jump, to eat, to write....
- ◇ Some verbs like 'make', 'let' do not have 'to' infinitive. They have **bare infinitives**. They are also not verbs.

Examples for bare infinitives

- She made me come.
 - He made me laugh.
 - The gardener let the boys go inside.
 - We heard the bell ring.
 - They saw the man enter the room.
 - He noticed the man slip out of the crowd.
- ◇ 'come', 'laugh', 'go', 'ring', 'enter', 'slip' are not verbs; they are bare infinitives. The encircled words are verbs.

Examples for simple sentences (with only one verb):

- Ancient people regarded the strong wind as a god.
- A bad workman always quarrels with the tools.
- Mohan's father wrote a long letter to the principal.
- There was silence always.
- Hearing these words the cats asked the monkey to act as their judge.
- A police man with an umbrella in hand stands at the crossing to control the traffic.
- Shah entered the palace of the king thinking it to be an inn.
- In spite of your own fault I like you still.
- Because of your foolishness you were punished by the principal.
- Bhal, a resident of Agra came to the king of Delhi to complain about the murder of his son.

COMPOUND SENTENCE

- ◇ Compound sentence is a sentence with two or more co-ordinate clauses.
- ◇ This sentence has more than one verb.
- ◇ All the clauses are independent clauses connected by a co-ordinate conjunction.
and, but, yet for, so, still etc.
- The moon rose and everything looked bright.
 - I got the book from the library and read it and enjoyed it.
 - The man was poor but he was happy.
 - He worked hard to learn English, for he had to pass a test to get his promotion.
 - He got a first class in B.A. still he could not get a good job.
 - He is poor yet he is happy.
 - The child had a stomach upset so we took him to a doctor.
 - The king slew his brother and became the king.
 - Walk quickly or else you can't over take her.

Change of simple into compound.

To change a simple sentence into a compound we should create a new clause with a co-ordinate conjunction.

1. Being blind he could not cross the road.
He was blind so he could not cross the road.
2. Being poor they often suffered great hardship.
They were poor so they often suffered great hardship.
3. Slaying his brother the prince became the king.
The prince slew his brother and became the king.
4. Hearing the entire case, the judge acquitted all of them.
The judge heard the entire case and acquitted all of them.
5. Besides being punished he was fined also.
He was not only punished but also fined.
6. In spite of poverty he was happy.
He was poor but he was happy.

COMPLEX SENTENCE

Complex sentence is a sentence which has more than one clause, one clause being main clause and the other clause(s) being subordinate clause(s) connected by subordinate conjunction.

- As he was ill / he could not attend the class.
- Though he is poor/ he is happy.
- I met my friend /who had come from Chennai.
- I am glad /that he recovered from illness.
- We all admire a man/ who is courageous.
- Where he lives / is not known to anyone.
- If it rains, we shall not go out.

Some sentences have split clauses. One clause's subject and predicate are not close to each other. The second clause will be in between the subject and predicate of the first clause.

- A man who talks too much is seldom wise.
- A man is seldom wise who talks too much.

Simple into complex.

1. On being punished he wept.
As he was punished he wept.
2. During Queen Victoria's reign there were many wars.
When Queen Victoria reigned there were many wars.
3. Being ill treated by his master he ran away.
As he was ill treated by his master he ran away.
4. He was too dull to understand.
He was so dull that he could not understand.

5. With your permission I will go.
If you give permission I will go.
6. After the death of his father he left for Mumbai.
After his father had died he left for Mumbai.
7. In spite of his poverty he was happy.
Though he was poor he was happy.
8. He failed to my great surprise.
It was my great surprise that he failed.
9. He worked hard to win the first prize.
He worked hard so that he could win the first prize.
10. You cannot succeed without working hard.
You cannot succeed if you don't work hard.
11. Having finished the work, we went for a walk.
After we had finished the work we went for a walk.
12. An honest man is the noblest work of God.
A man who is honest is the noblest work of God. (split clause)
13. He is a man of great ability.
He is a man who has great ability.
14. Hard working people prosper in the world.
People who work hard prosper in the world. (split clause)
15. He is a courageous man.
He is a man who has courage.
16. The author of this book was a poor man.
The man who wrote this book was a poor man. (split clause)
17. This is the rebel's meeting place.
This is the place where the rebels meet.
18. He admitted his guilt.
He admitted that he was guilty.
19. We heard of her failure.
We heard that she failed.
20. I do not know the day of his birth.
I do not know when he was born.
21. His speech on that day was much appreciated.
What he spoke on that day was much appreciated.
22. I expect to meet David.
I expect that I will meet David.

Textual Exercises

Simple sentence

Pick out the finite verbs in the following sentences:

- | | |
|--|----------------------------|
| a. You can solve this problem in different ways. | - can solve |
| b. The professor has been working on the last chapter of the book since March. | - has been working |
| c. Despite being a celebrity, Ravi mingles easily with everyone. | - mingles |
| d. You must speak clearly to make yourself understood. | - must speak |
| e. The chairman being away, the clerk is unable to approve the proposal. | - is |
| f. Getting down from the car, the Chief Guest walked towards the dais amidst applause. | - walked |
| g. The old man struggled to walk without support. | - struggled |
| h. In case of emergency, please contact this number. | - contact |
| i. The sun having set, the temperature fell rapidly. | - fell |
| j. But for your help, I could not have completed the assignment. | - could not have completed |

Read the following passage and identify the simple sentences.

Sunflowers turn according to the position of the sun. In other words, they 'chase the light'. Have you ever wondered what happens on cloudy, rainy days when the sun is completely covered by clouds? If you think the sunflower withers or turns its head towards the ground, you are completely mistaken. Do you know what happens? Sunflowers turn to each other to share their energy. Learning from Nature, we too should support and empower each other.

Complex Sentence

Look at the following complex sentences. Circle the Main clauses and underline the Subordinate clauses.

- Nobody knows when the power supply will resume.
- Please tell me what the time is.
- The man who directed the film was my schoolmate.
- I believe that all men are basically good.
- No one knows when he will return.

Pick out the complex sentences in the following passage.

A man saw a lion in the bush, as he was walking through the forest. He did not know what to do. He was helpless. He was too scared to turn around and run. He just knelt down as if he were getting ready to pray. He closed his eyes, thinking that the lion would pounce on him anytime. Out of the corner of his eye, he saw the lion on its knees too. Shocked, he asked the lion what it was doing. The lion replied that he was praying before he started his meal.

Compound Sentence**Identify the two Main clauses and conjunction in each of the following sentences.**

Page 123

- a. **It started raining suddenly and people ran for shelter.**
 1. It started raining suddenly
 2. people ran for shelter
 Conjunction – and
- b. **Understand the concept well, otherwise you cannot solve the problem.**
 1. understand the concept well
 2. you cannot solve the problem
 Conjunction – otherwise
- c. **Fifty candidates appeared for the interview, but only five were selected.**
 1. Fifty candidates appeared for the interview
 2. only five were selected
 Conjunction – but
- d. **Ramesh did not know Spanish, so he wanted a translator.**
 1. Ramesh did not know Spanish
 2. he wanted a translator
 Conjunction – so
- e. **He is a good actor, still he is not popular.**
 1. He is a good actor
 2. he is not popular
 Conjunction – still

Pick out the compound sentences in the following passage.

Page 123

The food we eat has to be digested and then thrown out of the body. The air we breathe in, has to be thrown out, to help us survive. But we hold negative emotions like insecurity, anger and jealousy within ourselves for years. If these negative emotions are not eliminated, the mind grows corrupt and diseased. Let us do away with hatred and lead a healthy life filled with peace and joy.

Complete the sentences choosing the right endings.

Page 124

No.			Answers
1.	We were thoroughly disappointed	to find out his address.	3
2.	Hardly had he stepped out	we could not go further.	5
3.	They wanted	since our team did not get a prize.	1
4.	Since we had run out of petrol	was his reckless driving.	2
5.	The cause of his injury	when it began to rain.	4

Exercise with Answer

1. **Despite her poverty, Ramya continues her studies. (Change in to Complex and Compound)**
 Though Ramya is poor she continues her studies. (Complex)
 Ramya is poor but she continues her studies. (compound)
2. **He was ill but he attended the meeting. (Change into complex and simple)**
 Though he was ill he attended the meeting. (complex)
 In spite of his illness he attended the meeting. (simple)
3. **Even though Raghu studied well, he did not score high marks. (Change into compound and simple)**
 Raghu studied well but he did not score high marks. (Compound)
 In spite of studying well he did not score high marks. (Simple)
4. **On finishing his work, he went to bed. (Change into compound and complex)**
 When he finished his work he went to bed. (Complex)
 He finished his work and went to bed. (Compound)
5. **Tea is too hot for me to drink. (Change into complex and compound)**
 Tea is so hot that I cannot drink it. (Complex)
 Tea is very hot so I cannot drink it. (Compound)
6. **I am very ill and so I cannot attend the school. (Change into complex and simple)**
 As I am very ill I cannot attend the school. (Complex)
 Being very ill I cannot attend the school. (simple)
 Because of illness, I cannot attend the school. (simple)
7. **After we had completed our homework, we started seeing the film. (Change into compound and simple)**
 Having completed our homework, we started seeing the film. (simple)
 We had completed our homework and so we started seeing the film. (Compound)
8. **Since the driver was careless, the accident happened there. (Change into simple and compound)**
 The driver being careless the accident happened. (Simple)
 Due to the carelessness of the driver, the accident happened there. (Simple)
 The driver was careless so the accident happened. (Compound)
9. **If you work hard, you will get high marks. (Change into compound and simple)**
 Work hard and you will get high marks. (Compound)
 Work hard to get high marks. (Simple)
 In the event of working hard, you will get high marks. (Simple)
10. **You must pass the exam or you cannot get the job. (Change into simple and complex)**
 If you pass the exam you can get the job. (Complex)
 Unless you pass the exam, you cannot get the job. (Complex)
 You must pass the exam to get the job. (Simple)
 In the event of not passing the exam, you cannot get the job.

Self - Evaluation

1. As soon as the thief saw the police, he ran away. *(Change into compound and simple)*
2. In the event of your being honest, you will be rewarded. *(Change into compound and complex)*
3. On his arrival, the people were happy. *(Change into compound and complex)*
4. As there was rain, the match was cancelled. *(Change into compound and simple)*
5. In the event of your not studying well, you cannot pass the exam. *(Change into complex and compound)*
6. Being tired, he sat down to rest. *(Change into complex and compound)*
7. On account of her weakness, Ranjani could not continue her works. *(Change into compound and complex)*
8. The baby saw her mother and she laughed. *(Change into complex and simple)*
9. The work being difficult, they could not do it. *(Change into complex and compound)*
10. She is so dull that she cannot solve the problem. *(Change into compound and simple)*
11. He is too short to climb up. *(Change into complex and compound)*
12. In spite of being rich, he does not help others. *(Change into complex and compound)*
13. Having taken my breakfast, I went to office. *(Change into complex and compound)*
14. If you worked well, you would get the first rank. *(Change into simple and compound)*
15. Hearing the news, they wept. *(Change into compound and complex)*
16. I received the letter and I started to my native place. *(Change into simple and complex)*
17. In spite of heavy rain, the match continued. *(Change into complex and compound)*
18. I am preparing for my exam in order to get the first rank. *(Change into complex and compound)*
19. In spite of his hard work, she could not get a good job. *(Change into complex and compound)*
20. Hard-working students will succeed. *(Change into complex and compound)*

PART - II

6. DEGREES OF COMPARISON

Marks : 2

- ◇ All the adjectives and adverbs have three degrees - positive, comparative, and superlative.
- ◇ Generally by adding 'er' and 'est' with the positive degree we make comparative and superlative respectively.

• strong	-	stronger	-	strongest
• long	-	longer	-	longest
• short	-	shorter	-	shortest
• fast	-	faster	-	fastest
• hard	-	harder	-	hardest
• clever	-	cleverer	-	cleverest
- ◇ Some words change in different ways.

• good	-	better	-	best
• bad	-	worse	-	worst
• little	-	less	-	least
• much	-	more	-	most

- ◇ Generally the positive degree with more than two syllables will have 'more' and 'most' for comparative and superlative respectively.
 - beautiful - more beautiful - most beautiful
 - wonderful - more wonderful - most wonderful
- ◇ There are many exceptions to this rule. The words like 'popular', 'famous', 'splendid' etc. have comparative with 'more' and superlative with 'most'.
- ◇ When we have only one person, place or thing there is no chance for any other degree except positive.
 - Andrew is a clever boy.
 - Elephant is a big animal.
 - Jane is a pretty girl.
- ◇ When we have two particular things we have only two degrees - positive and comparative.
 - The lion is bigger than the tortoise.
 - The tortoise is not so big as the lion.
- ◇ If we have positive sentence in comparative, the positive degree will be in negative. If the comparative is in negative, the positive degree will be in positive.
 - Tom is healthier than Bob. (comparative)
 - Bob is not as healthy as Tom. (positive)
 - Raja is not more handsome than Khan. (comparative)
 - Khan is as handsome as Raja. (positive)
- ◇ When we have more than two items we have all the three degrees.
 - The man in the centre is the tallest officer. (superlative)
 - The man in the centre is taller than any other officer. (comparative)
 - No other officer is so (as) tall as the man in the centre. (positive)
 - Shakespeare is the greatest playwright. (superlative)
 - Shakespeare is greater than any other playwright. (comparative)
 - No other playwright is so great as Shakespeare. (positive)
- ◇ When we have more than one in the highest place there will be 'one of the' in the superlative degree.
 - The green car is one of the biggest cars in the picture. (superlative)
 - The green car is bigger than many other cars in the picture. (comparative)
 - Very few cars are as big as green car in the picture. (positive)
 - Ashoka was one of the famous kings in India. (superlative)
 - Ashoka was more famous than many other kings in India. (comparative)
 - Very few kings are as famous as Ashoka in India. (positive)

Positive, Comparative, Superlative

Types	Examples
Comparing two things	Gita is no as clever as Rita. – positive Rita is cleverer than Gita. – comparative
Comparing more than two things – the type	Raja is the tallest boy in the class. – superlative Raja is taller than any other boy in the class. – comparative No other boy is as tall as Raja in the class. – positive
Comparing more than two things – one of the type	Kumar is one of the strongest players in the team. – superlative Kumar is stronger than many players in the team. – comparative Very few players are as strong as Kumar in the team. – positive

Exercise with Answer**Positive to Comparative**

- David is as tall as Ashok. – Ashok is not taller than David.
- The oak is not so tall as the pine. – The pine is taller than the oak.
- TV is as useful as Radio. – Radio is not more useful than TV.
- Sword is not so mighty as pen. – Pen is mightier than sword.

Superlative to comparative and positive**The type**

- Mt. Everest is the highest peak in the world. (superlative)
 Mt. Everest is higher than any other peak in the world. (comparative)
 No other peak is so/as high as Mt. Everest in the world. (positive)

One of the type

- TV is one of the most useful media to know the news. (superlative)
 TV is more useful than many other media to know the news. (comparative)
 Very few media are as useful as TV to know the new. (positive)

Self - Evaluation**Change the following sentences into other degrees of comparison.**

- Kolkata is the most populated city in India.
- Very few leaders were as popular as Nehru in India.
- Boby was richer than many other men in his place.
- Tom is as healthy as Bob.
- Very few sons are as obedient as Jim.
- No other scientist is so great as Newton.
- Kashmir is more beautiful than any other place in India.

PART - III**1. NON-VERBAL PRESENTATION****Marks : 3**

- ◇ Study the pie chart carefully.
- ◇ Try to understand what it is about. Find out the greatest / least percentage. Answer in a sentence.

Textual Exercises

Page 153

Read the following information given in the table below and answer the questions.

A nice choice from Chennai to the National capital.

RAJADHANI EXPRESS TIME TABLE

Shortest Route between Chennai and Hazrat Nizamuddin 8 Halts & 324 intermediate stations in between

1)

Station Name	Departs	Day	Speed
Chennai Central	06.05	1	75
Vijayawada	11.55	1	76
Warangal	14.40	1	77
Balharshah	18.00	1	78
Nagpur	20.45	1	74
Bhopal	02.10	2	89
Jhansi	05.31	2	99
Gwalior	06.32	2	85
Agra Cantt	07.57	2	76
Hazrat Nizamudin	10.25	2	-

Questions

- a. The number of stations between Chennai Central and Hazrat Nizamudin is
 i) five ii) ten iii) eight iv) eleven **Ans: iii)**
- b. The train is expected to reach around 8.45 PM
 i) Warangal ii) Vijayawada iii) Bhopal iv) Nagpur **Ans: iv)**
- c. Between the train runs at its maximum speed.
 i) Bhopal and Gwalior ii) Bhopal and Jhansi
 iii) Bhopal and Hazrat Nizamudin iv) Bhopal and Agra **Ans: ii)**
- d. Almost the train reaches Vijayawada.
 i) the day after ii) around early morning
 iii) late night iv) around noon **Ans: iv)**

e. People prefer the Rajadhani express to travel from Chennai to reach the capital because

- i) it reaches the destination on the same day. ii) the charge is reasonable.
iii) the train halts at Ten stations. iv) it is the shortest route from Chennai to New Delhi.

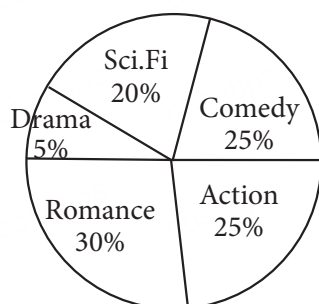
Ans: iv)

f. The destination of Rajadhani express is

- i) Hazarat Nizamudin ii) New Delhi junction
iii) Old Delhi iv) Rajkot

Ans: i)

2. Study the pie chart given and answer the questions that follow.



Questions:

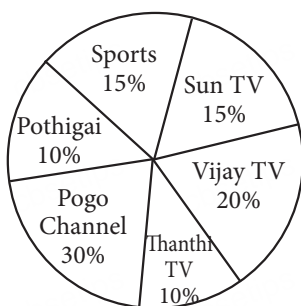
- a) What are the two types of movies liked by equal percentage of people?
b) Which type of movie is preferred by most number of people?
c) Which type is least enjoyed and favoured by people?

Answers:

- a) Sci-Fi and comedy
b) Romance
c) Drama

Exercise with Answer

1. TV Viewership



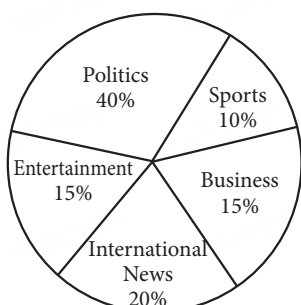
Questions:

- a) Which are the two channels preferred by equal percentage of people?
b) Which TV channel enjoys maximum viewership?
c) Which TV channel is preferred by children?

Answers:

- a) Sports and Sun TV b) Pogo channel c) Pogo channel

2. Content coverage of Newspapers



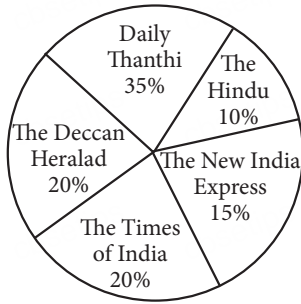
Questions:

- a) What are the two news items which are given equal importance?
b) Which news item has less number of pages?
c) Which news item dominates maximum coverage?

Answers:

- a) Entertainment and business b) Sports c) Politics

3. Newspaper Viewership



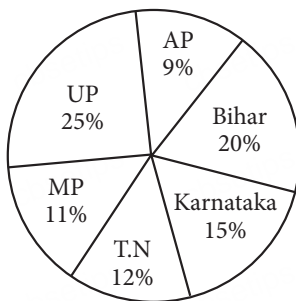
Questions:

- Which newspaper is liked by most number of people?
- Which newspapers are preferred by equal percentage of people?
- Which newspaper is least favoured by people?

Answers:

- a) Daily Thanthi b) The Deccan Herald and the Times of India c) The Hindu

4. Population



Questions:

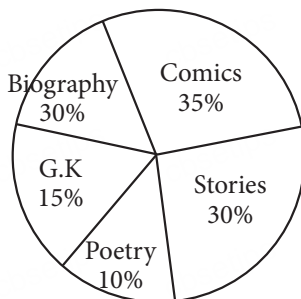
- Which state has the highest population?
- What is the difference in percentage between the most populated state and the least populated State?
- Which state has the 3% population rate less than Karnataka?

Answers:

- Uttar Pradesh - 25%
- 16% is the difference in between the most populated State and the least populated State
- Tamil Nadu.

Self - Evaluation

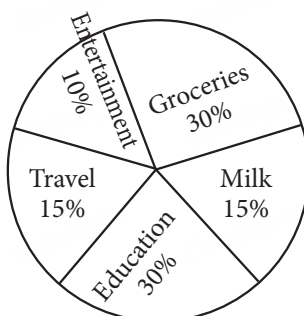
1. Student's choice of reading.



Questions:

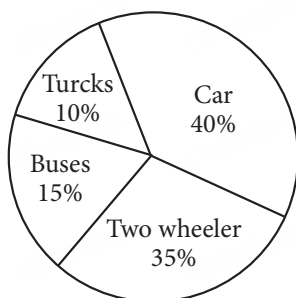
- What are the two types of books preferred by the students equally?
- Which type of books is mostly read by the students?
- Which type of books occupies third place of preference?

2. Monthly expenditure of Sam's family.

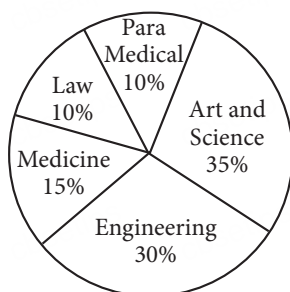


Questions:

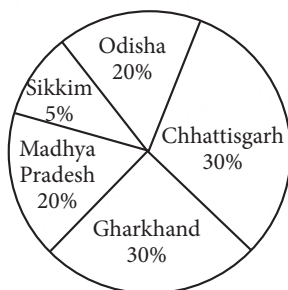
- On what does Sam spend more money - education or milk?
- Does Sam save money for future needs?
- Which has least percentage of Sam's expenditure?

3. No. vehicles during the peak hours.**Questions:**

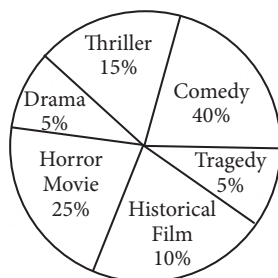
- Which type of vehicle is found largest in number?
- Which type of vehicle occupies the second highest place?
- Say True or False:
Buses are least in number during peak hours.

4. Choice of higher studies.**Questions:**

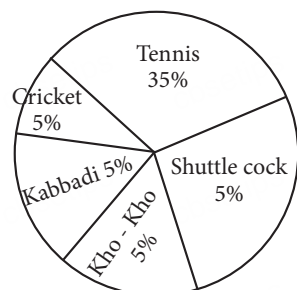
- Which are the two courses that students prefer equally?
- Which faculty enjoys highest percentage of preference?
- Which subjects attract more number of students apart from Arts and Science?

5. No. of malaria and dengue cases (2018-2019).**Questions:**

- Which are the three states hit the worst by malaria and dengue?
- Which state has the least number of malaria and dengue cases?
- Say True or False:
Tamilnadu occupies the third place in the case of spread of dengue.

6. Preference of films by adults .**Questions:**

- Which type of film is least preferred by the adults?
- Next to comedy, which type of movie attracts most number of adults?
- Say True or False: Tragedy and Thriller register 3: 1

7. Games played by girls.**Questions:**

- Which are the two games that have equal percentage of preference?
- Which game is least played by girls?
- Which is the most favourite game played by girls?

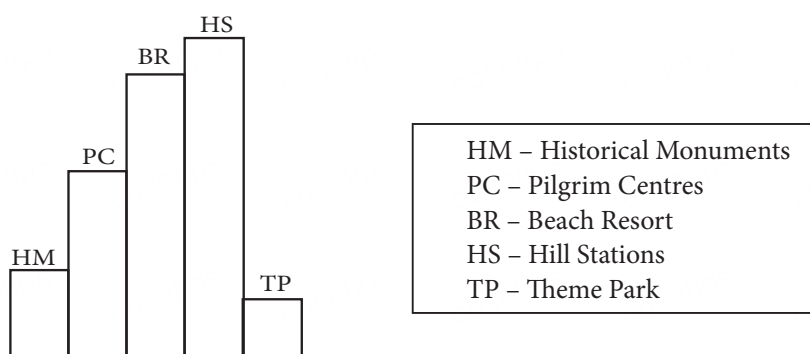
8. Study the classification of foreign tourists from four countries according to the mode of travel to India in 2018.

Country	Arrivals (in numbers)	Air	Sea	Land
New Zealand	10811	96.7	0.8	2.5
Japan	59709	94.7	1.1	4.2
Korea (South)	29374	94.3	0.1	5.6
Australia	50743	97.6	0.6	1.8

Questions:

- Which mode of travel is liked most by the tourists?
- Which country stands first to visit India?
- Which mode of travel is liked least by the tourists?

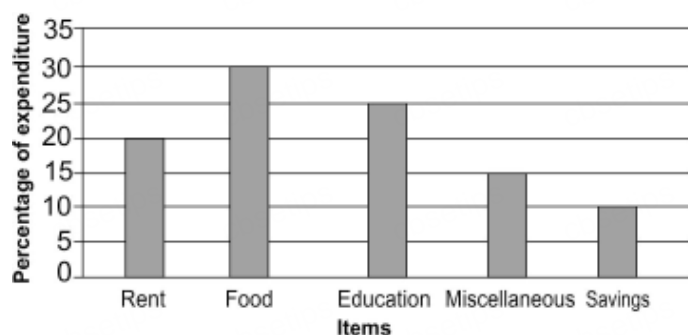
9. Study the chart relating to Tourist Centre preferences. Answer the questions that follow.



Questions:

- Which place is preferred most by the tourists?
- Which place is preferred least by the tourists?
- Which place stands second in the preference?

10. Study the following graph about the monthly expenditure of a family and answer the questions that follow.



Questions:

- For which item does the family spend the most?
- How much does the family spend for education?
- Which item stands third in the list?

PART - III

2. PROCESS WRITING

Marks : 3

Words For Describing A Process:

- ◇ First,
- ◇ Once (action 1), (action 2)
- ◇ Having (action 1), the next step is (action 2)
- ◇ Next, Then, Finally,
- ◇ **First** and **Finally** are used to describe the first and last steps in the process.
- ◇ The others can be used in any order.

Textual Exercises

Preparation of apple juice

You plan to delight your parents and sister, serving them chilled apple juice. Here is the process: (Complete the sentences with the right form of the verbs)

Four or five apples are taken (take) and washed (wash) well. They are wiped (wipe) dry and cut into pieces of medium size. The seeds are removed (remove). Then the apples are put (put) into the mixer. Some milk is added (add). The apples are crushed (crush) and a fine liquid is obtained (obtain). This liquid is filtered (filter) and the juice is stored (store) in the refrigerator. It is taken (take) out whenever needed, and after adding sugar, it is served (serve) in cups.

Installing a computer

The description of installing a computer in your study room is given in the form of jumbled sentences. Rearrange the sentences in the right order and form a coherent paragraph.

1. Once you connect the CPU, connect the keyboard and the mouse.
2. Before turning on the power, check that all parts are connected to the CPU.
3. First open the box and take out the computer parts.
4. Plug both the computer and the monitor with a power cord.
5. Set the computer on a table or flat surface.
6. Finally turn on the power.

Answer: 3, 5, 1, 4, 2, 6.

Attempt a description of the following processes, in about 100 words each, either using the imperative or the passive.

1. Preparing your favourite dish.

Preparing a favourite dish

- ◇ Take a bowl and mix fennel seeds, mustard seeds, cumin seeds and asafoetida.
- ◇ Heat oil in another pan. Add the seed mixture.
- ◇ Add small pieces of onion when crackling sound is heard.
- ◇ Saute till the onions turn pink.

- ◇ Add paneer, turmeric, chilli and pepper. Stir for sometime.
- ◇ Add coriander and salt. Bring them to a boil. Serve Achaari Paneer hot.

2. Organising a birthday party in your house.

Organising a birthday party in the house

- ◇ Prepare a list of friends, relatives and neighbours to invite.
- ◇ Collect their phone numbers. Order a big birthday cake and milk chocolates.
- ◇ Arrange for tea according to the number of people invited.
- ◇ Buy colour papers or festoons Decorate the hall where the party will be held.
- ◇ Invite the people two days before the birthday party.
- ◇ Buy ready-made garments and wear them on the birthday.
- ◇ Cut the cake and distribute the pieces of cake and chocolates.
- ◇ Serve tea after getting blessings.

3. Sending a letter by courier service.

Sending a letter by courier service.

- ◇ The letter is put in an envelope which is covered with gum.
- ◇ The address of the receiver is written on the front side.
- ◇ The address of the sender is written on the reverse side of the envelope.
- ◇ It is taken to a courier service office. It is weighed.
- ◇ Money is paid according to the weight of the envelope.
- ◇ The bill with the details of the envelope is obtained.

4. Obtaining a demand draft from a bank.

Obtaining a demand draft from a bank

- ◇ Collect a DD application.
- ◇ Fill in the details such as the sender's address and the beneficiary's address.
- ◇ Mention the exact sum of money to be sent and add the commission amount.
- ◇ Mention the mode of payment either in cash or by cheque.
- ◇ Mention the place where the DD can be encashed.
- ◇ Affix your signature and hand over the form to the clerk.
- ◇ Obtain a counterfoil and wait for your Demand Draft.

5. Describe the process of making coffee.

- ◇ First take a teaspoon full of coffee powder in a cup or glass.
- ◇ Add a little water. Also add a little sugar.
- ◇ Beat the mixture till the brown coffee powder becomes a creamy paste.
- ◇ Boil milk. Pour the boiling milk into the cup or glass with the creamy paste.
- ◇ Finally stir with a teaspoon and sprinkle chocolate powder over it.
- ◇ A steaming cup of coffee is ready.

6. Describe the process of washing clothes.

- ◇ First mix a cup of some good quality detergent powder in about 8 to 10 liters of warm water in a bucket.

- ◇ Whisk it well so that the powder dissolves into a rich lather.
- ◇ Soak dirty clothes in the water. Leave them for half an hour.
- ◇ Rub the clothes with hands. Rub a little dry powder on extra dirty parts of the clothes.
- ◇ Squeeze the soapy solution out of the clothes.
- ◇ Rinse the clothes at least twice in clean water.
- ◇ Finally squeeze out extra water from the clothes and spread them in the sun for drying.

7. Describe the process of opening a bank account.

- ◇ First we should choose a bank of our choice.
- ◇ Then we should decide the type of bank account.
- ◇ Let us decide on savings account.
- ◇ We must fill the Bank Account Opening Form. We must get an account holder to introduce us.
- ◇ Then the form must be submitted to the manager with documents like Aadhar Card, Pan No. Pass-port size photo.
- ◇ Finally we must deposit an initial amount fixed by the bank.

8. Describe the process of preparing a greeting card for a friend's birthday.

- ◇ First I will gather materials such as paper, cardstock, colour pencil, sticker, glue etc.
- ◇ I will layout and fold the paper in half to bring the top and bottom edge together.
- ◇ I will use a thick marker of different colours to write "Happy Birthday.
- ◇ May God Bless you" on the front of the card.
- ◇ Finally an awesome birthday greeting is ready.

Self - Evaluation

1. Describe the process of sending an article to a magazine.
2. Describe the process of preparing a poster for cleanliness drive.
3. Describe the process of preparing tomato soup.
4. Describe the process of planting a sapling.
5. Describe the process of sending a letter by registered post.
6. Describe the process of applying to college for further study.
7. Describe the process of using a clinical thermometer.
8. Describe the process of getting a cheque for Rs. 1500 encashed.
9. Describe the process of sending an e-mail to your friend.
10. Describe the process of whitewashing the walls of your house.
11. Describe the process of getting a driving licence.
12. Describe the process of making an omelet.
13. Describe the process of train reservation.
14. Describe the process of mending punctured tyre of the cycle.
15. Describe how you will remove a stain on your clothes.

PART - III**3. DIALOGUE WRITING****Marks : 3**

- ◇ In Dialogue writing the sentences should be short. Each exchange should be short.
- ◇ The question and answer should be sensible. One dialogue should not go beyond 10 exchanges.
- ◇ However students should follow the requirement of the question.
- ◇ In this chapter we will see the open dialogue. Here a situation will be given and we have to write a suitable dialogue.

Textual Exercises**Page 74****Write a dialogue of minimum 3 exchanges for the given situation.**

Pair work : Practise the dialogue with another student. Then write a similar dialogue between a student and the class teacher regarding an educational trip.

Class teacher : Sunder, I am planning to take your class students to an educational trip.

Student : Oh! Wonderful, where madam?

Class teacher : That's what I am thinking. Do you have any suggestion?

Student : I have one or two places in my mind. It depends on the duration of the trip.

Class teacher : Maximum we can spend two days. I got permission from the principal only for two days.

Student : I think we can go to Madurai and Kodaikannal.

Class teacher : Why these two places?

Student : Madam, In Madurai we can see many historical places including the famous Menashi Amman Temple. The next day we can go to Kodaikannal and get a lot of information about gardens.

Class teacher : Where can we stay?

Student : Surely in Kodaikannal.

Class teacher : Then I will inform other students and see how they receive this idea.

Build a conversation for the following situations with a minimum of five exchanges.**Page 74, 75****1. A passenger and a railway staff regarding the cancellation of the reserved tickets.**

Passenger : Sir, what should I do to cancel my reserved tickets?

Railway staff : When do you want to travel and where?

Passenger : Tomorrow to Chennai.

Railway staff : You will lose 30% of the fare.

Passenger : Ok sir, how to cancel the ticket?

Railway staff : Did you book online or get the ticket from the counter?

Passenger : I got it from the counter.

Railway Staff : Then ok. Fill the form and give it to me.

Passenger : Is it this form sir?
 Railway staff : Yes, fill it and give it to me.

2. Two friends about the NSS camp which they are going to attend.

Sukanya : Are you getting ready for the NSS camp?
 Ramya : Yesterday only I got permission from my father.
 Sukanya : I too had some problem to get permission but somehow I got it.
 Ramya : As it is a 10 day programme, our mother was a little anxious.
 Sukanya : Ok. Let's talk about our preparation.
 Ramya : First day we are working near the temple. It will be very interesting.
 Sukanya : Third day I will be in charge of food.
 Ramya : I will also join you.
 Sukanya : Thank you. It will be very interesting.
 Ramya : I have to complete my packing. See you tomorrow.

3. A salesman and a customer at an electronic shop.

Salesman : Yes sir, what can I do for you?
 Customer : The CD player in my lap has some problem.
 Salesman : Do you have your lap with you now?
 Customer : Yes I have. Here it is.
 Salesman : Let me check it. We can't use it.
 Customer : Do you have new one?
 Salesman : Yes I have.
 Customer : Shall I see that?
 Salesman : Do you want to keep it inside or do you want one to fix outside?
 Customer : I want to have it inside.
 Salesman : You can select it.

4. A father and his daughter about the advantages of the habit of reading newspapers.

Father : My dear, get today's news paper from the portico.
 Daughter : Here it is. Why dad everyday morning your life starts with the newspaper?
 Farther : Yes dear, this is a way to know what is happening around us.
 Daughter : TV news can also give it to us.
 Father : Newspaper will give the news and the views of many people like activists, scientists and the reporters.
 Daughter : Does it make any difference dad?
 Father : Yes of course. Editor's column gives the view of that newspaper. Many columnists write articles on economy, education, science and so on.
 Daughter : Oh, it is very informative to talk to you.
 Father : If you are interested to read newspaper there are items for your age group.
 Daughter : Surely I will do it father.

Extend the conversation with two more relevant exchanges.

Page 75

1. Write a dialogue between a Receptionist and a Traveller.

Receptionist : Good evening, sir. Welcome to Chennai.
Traveller : I would like to book a deluxe room in your hotel for 3 days.
Receptionist : Single room or double room?
Traveller : Double room though I am single.
Receptionist : Sir, give me your ID card.
Traveller : Here it is.

2. Write a dialogue between a Student and a Teacher.

Student : Good morning, sir. May I come in?
Teacher : Good morning, why are you late today?
Student : Sir, I missed my school bus.
Teacher : How did you miss it?
Student : Sorry sir, my uncle came home from US. So I started a little late from home.
Teacher : Ok. Be punctual hereafter.

3. Write a dialogue between a customer and a sales man.

Customer : Would you help me to find a book?
Salesman : Of course. Do you know the author or title?
Customer : Well I was at the beach and saw a girl reading a purple book. She looked like she was enjoying it a lot. I want that book.
Salesman : Madam, you have to be more specific. There are lots of books with purple cover.
Customer : Can't you search on your computer for purple books?
Salesman : Unfortunately, no
Customer : In that case, I will go to a store that has better computers.

4. Write a dialogue between a patient and a doctor.

Patient : Hello Doctor!
Doctor : Hello, what is your problem?
Patient : Doctor, I have a problem of not having proper sleep at night.
Doctor : I'll give you medicine.
Patient : Thank you Doctor. How often should I take the medicine?
Doctor : Just take one pill about 30 minutes before you go to bed.
Patient : For how long?
Doctor : For at least 30 days. Come back, if problem continues.
Patient : Anything else?
Doctor : Keep yourself busy.

Self - Evaluation

Write a dialogue for the following at least with four exchanges.

1. Write a dialogue between two students about their hobbies.
2. Write a dialogue between father and son about the choice of course after + 2.
3. Write a dialogue between two friends about their dreams.
4. Write a dialogue between a customer and a railway ticket booking clerk.
5. Write a dialogue between two classmates about the visit of CEO to their school.
6. Write a dialogue between a police man and a stranger who is asking the way to railway station.
7. Write a dialogue between a teacher and a student who has not brought back the progress card.
8. Write a dialogue between a father and his son / daughter who is asking the father permission and money to join a school tour.
9. Write a dialogue between the present student and an old student who wants to know about the present condition of the school.
10. Write a dialogue between the cine-goer and the booking clerk
11. Write a dialogue between the teacher and Kumar who is late to class.
12. Write a dialogue between a carpenter and a customer who wants to get a table made.

PART - III**4. PROVERBS****Marks : 3****Type I**

- ◇ Proverbs are popular sayings that provide nuggets of wisdom.
- ◇ By using the proverbs in our language we can improve our standard of speaking and writing.
- ◇ There are plenty of proverbs in English language.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. A bad workman always blames his tools. | 15. A rolling stone gathers no moss. |
| 2. A bird in hand is worth two in the bush. | 16. A stitch in time saves nine. |
| 3. A chain is only as strong as its weakest link. | 17. As you sow, so you shall reap. |
| 4. Actions speak louder than words. | 18. Barking dogs seldom bite. |
| 5. A drowning man will clutch at a straw. | 19. Beauty is in the eye of the beholder. |
| 6. Adversity and loss make a man wise. | 20. Beauty is only skin deep. |
| 7. A journey of thousand miles begins with a single step | 21. Beggars can't be choosers. |
| 8. A leopard can't change its spots | 22. Better late than never. |
| 9. All good things come to an end. | 23. Better to wear out than to rust out. |
| 10. All that glitters is not gold. | 24. Blood is thicker than water. |
| 11. All's fair in love and war | 25. Cleanliness is next to Godliness. |
| 12. An empty vessel makes much noise. | 26. Cowards die many times before their deaths. |
| 13. An idle brain is the devil's workshop. | 27. Don't bite off more than you can chew. |
| 14. One swallow does not make summer. | 28. Don't blow your own trumpet. |
| | 29. Don't cast pearls before swine. |

- | | |
|--|---|
| 30. Don't count your chickens before they hatch. | 55. Make hay while the sun shines. |
| 31. Don't judge a book by its cover | 56. Necessity is the mother of invention. |
| 32. Don't kill the goose that lays the golden eggs. | 57. No gain without pain. |
| 33. Don't put all your eggs in one basket. | 58. Once bitten twice shy. |
| 34. Don't cry over spilt milk. | 59. One man's meat is another man's poison. |
| 35. Don't put the cart before the horse. | 60. One man's junk is another man's treasure. |
| 36. Don't build castles in the air. | 61. Out of sight, out of mind. |
| 37. Don't rob Peter to pay Paul. | 62. Pen is mightier than sword. |
| 38. Eagle's don't catch flies. | 63. Rome wasn't built in a day. |
| 39. Early bird catches the worm. | 64. Slow and steady wins the race. |
| 40. East or west home is the best. | 65. Still waters run deep. |
| 41. Every cloud has a silver lining. | 66. Strike while the iron is hot. |
| 42. Every dog has its day. | 67. The end justifies the means. |
| 43. Every man is the architect of his destiny. | 68. Time and tide wait for no man. |
| 44. Familiarity breeds contempt. | 69. Too many cooks spoil the broth. |
| 45. Fools rush in where angels fear to tread. | 70. Where there's a will, there's a way. |
| 46. Fortune favors the brave. | 71. Where one door shuts, another opens. |
| 47. Fine feathers do not make fine birds. | 72. Think before you leap. |
| 48. God helps those who help themselves. | 73. Don't look a gift horse in the mouth. |
| 49. Good things come to those who wait. | 74. People in glass houses should not throw stones. |
| 50. Half a loaf is better than none. | 75. You can't have your cake and eat it too. |
| 51. Honesty is the best policy. | 76. After a storm comes a calm. |
| 52. It's never too late to mend. | 77. Distance lends enchantment. |
| 53. A journey of thousand miles begins with a single step. | 78. To err is human: to forgive is divine. |
| 54. Look before you leap | 79. Man proposes, God disposes |
| | 80. The face is the index of mind. |

Exercise with Answer

Complete the proverb using the word given in the bracket.

- | | |
|---|---------------------------|
| 1. A leopard can't change its _____. | (strips, spots, nature) |
| 2. Every cloud has a silver _____. | (colour, hue, lining) |
| 3. One man's _____ is another's poison. | (medicine, meat, drink) |
| 4. Familiarity _____ contempt. | (breeds, makes, produces) |
| 5. Think before you _____. | (leap, jump, run) |
| 6. Don't look a gift horse in the _____. | (face, head, mouth) |
| 7. People in glass houses should not throw _____. | (stones, paper, goods) |
| 8. You can't have your _____ and eat it too. | (pudding, cake, meat) |
| 9. As you sow so shall you _____. | (harvest, gain, reap) |
| 10. _____ of all trades master of none. | (Peter, Jack, James) |
| 11. Don't cry over split _____. | (soup, butter, milk) |
| 12. A burnt child _____ fire. | (dreads, fears, hates) |

Answers					
1. spots	2. lining	3. meat	4. breeds	5. leap	6. mouth
7. stones	8. cake	9. reap	10. Jack	11. milk	12. dreads

Self - Evaluation

Complete the proverb using the word given in the bracket.

- Every dog has his _____. (tail, day, eye)
 - After a _____ comes a calm. (storm, struggle, fight)
 - The face is the index of _____. (brain, soul, mind)
- East or west _____ is the best. (home, house, school)
 - Fine _____ do not make fine birds. (colour, feathers, legs)
 - _____ was not built in a day. (America, England, Rome)
- Man proposes; God _____. (accepts, completes, disposes)
 - Empty _____ make much noise. (vessels, men, women)
 - All that _____ is not gold. (shines, glitters, brightens)
- Pen is mightier than _____. (man, sword, teacher)
 - Strike while the iron is _____. (hot, ready, read)
 - _____ is the best policy. (honesty, truthfulness, highness)
- Where there is a _____ there is a way. (mean, need, will)
 - To err is _____ to forgive is divine. (human, man, world)
 - Make _____ while the sun shines. (way, hay, gift)
- Once bitten twice _____. (shy, dread, fear)
 - Early bird catches the _____. (prey, worm, pray)
 - Fortune favors the _____. (good, hard work, brave)
- Don't rob _____ to pay Paul. (Prem, Peter, Prince)
 - Out of sight, out of _____. (mind, thought, soul)
 - Don't build castles in _____. (stones, water, air)
- God helps those who help _____. (themselves, others, the poor)
 - Good things come to those who _____. (work, wait, read)
 - Half a loaf is better than _____. (one, many, none)
- Action speaks louder than _____. (thoughts, words, speech)
 - Many a drop make _____. (an ocean, a well, a river)
 - _____ makes a full man. (Teaching, Learning, Reading)
- A rolling stone gathers no _____. (moss, dirt, mud)
 - Beggars can't be _____. (rich, choosers, eaters)
 - A bad workman always blames his _____. (fortune, luck, tools)

Type II**Jumbled Proverbs****Exercise with Answer**

Rearrange the jumbled words to form a proverb.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. flower / no / makes / one / garland | - One flower makes no garland. |
| 2. hay / the / make / shines / while / Sun. | - Make hay while the sun shines. |
| 3. that / is / all / not / gold / glitters | - All that glitters is not gold. |
| 4. there / way / where / will / there is a / is a | - Where there is a will there is a way. |
| 5. built / was / in / a / Rome / not / day | - Rome was not built in a day. |
| 6. you / reap / you / so / as / sow | - As you sow, so you reap. |
| 7. the / strike / hot / iron / while / is | - Strike while the iron is hot. |
| 8. vessels / much / empty / noise / make | - Empty vessels make much noise. |
| 9. flock / of / together / same / birds / feather / the | - Birds of the same feather flock together. |
| 10. many the spoil too broth cooks. | - Too many cooks spoil the broth. |

Self - Evaluation

Rearrange the jumbled words to form a proverb.

Set I

- is / than / blood / water / thicker
- mightier / pen / sword / the / than / is / the
- err / to / is / divine / to / human / forgive / is

Set II

- drop / an / many / ocean / a / makes
- makes / perfect / reading / a / man
- never / garments / well / borrowed / fit

Set III

- shines / while / the / hay / sun / make
- better / than / prevention / cure / is
- seldom / dog / bites / a / barking

Set IV

- is / to / cleanliness / godliness / next
- the / calls / kettle / black / pot / the
- your / according / to / coat / cut / cloth / your

Set V

- is / not / of / roses / life / bed / a
- every / cloud / has / a / silver / lining
- a / nor / be / borrower / neither / lender / a

Set VI

- is / the / cause / greed / misery / of / root
- crime / is / the / of / poverty / mother
- rush / in / angles / to / fools / walk / where / dread

PART - III**5. EXPANSION OF HEADLINES****Marks : 3**

- ◇ While expanding the headlines, remember to
- Use articles wherever necessary.
 - Choose the proper tense form :
 - i) Past Tense or Present Perfect
 - ii) Future tense
 - iii) Present tense
 - Use passive voice in case of Past Participle in the headline.
 - Expand abbreviations / Acronyms.
 - Supply the missing details like place, time, agents (who or by whom) etc.

Exercise with Answer**Expand the following News headlines.****1. PM to inaugurate International Snooker Tourney.**

Prime Minister Sri Narendra Modi, will inaugurate the tenth edition of International Snooker Tournament to be held in New Delhi on the first of April, 2018.

2. Thirty dead in plane crash in France.

Thirty people including the pilot and five members of the crew are feared dead in a plane crash in France.

3. India Successfully test fires interceptor missile.

India has successfully test - fired its interceptor missile from SriHariKota.

4. India wins a thriller.

India defeated Bangladesh in a nail-biting thriller involving Dinesh Karthik who hit a last ball sixer in Premadesa Stadium, SriLanka.

5. Bird census commences in TN.

The TamilNadu Government commences bird census on 20th May. A detailed report is on the anvil.

6. IPL Matches shifted out of Chennai.

Following concerns over possible protests and disruption of traffic, the Indian Premier League matches scheduled to be held in Chennai are shifted to Pune.

7. +2 exam results next week.

The results of class XII public examination held in March are likely to be published in the last week of April, 2020

8. Hand book for teachers ready.

The Director of School Education says that hand books for class XI teachers will be made available in the first week of June.

9. Boat capsizes, 10 feared dead.

The boat that ferried ten tourists across the Palaruriver capsized, All the ten tourists are feared dead.

10. PM to inaugurate Def Expo 2019.

Prime Minister Narendra Modi will inaugurate a week-long Def Expo 2019 in Chennai next Thursday.

Self - Evaluation**Expand the following News headlines.**

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Aadhar data safe, govt affirms in SC. | 7. Govt. will not tolerate vandalism, says CM. |
| 2. Dravidian Language Family is 4500 years old: study. | 8. Traffic woes due to fly over work. |
| 3. DRS to be used in IPL. | 9. Collector inspects ailing elephant. |
| 4. Actor fined for riding without helmet. | 10. Probe on into death of fish. |
| 5. UP power dept. staff protest privatisation. | 11. Business man faces prison time for tax fraud. |
| 6. RTC driver dies at wheel but saves passengers. | 12. India wins medals at CWG. |
| | 13. Students rally on Dengue Awareness. |

PART - III**6. CHECK LIST****Marks : 3**

- ◇ We prepare check list of what we should have or what we should do in advance when we take up some job – like going on tour, preparing for competitive exam, going to join a hostel.

Model 1**Prepare a check list for your two days tour to Ooty.**

- Two sets of neat dress
- Toiletries
- Warm clothing
- Walking shoe
- Slippers
- Torch light
- A bundle of towel
- A book you like
- A plate and tumbler

Model 2**Prepared a check list to prepare for competitive exam.**

- Decide to join a coaching centre
- Buy required books
- Allot time for self-preparation
- Find out the websites and follow only them
- Don't waste time in other websites
- Fix time for writing self-test

Self - Evaluation

Prepare check list for the following.

1. Getting ready for an interview for job.
2. Visiting a temple.
3. Travel to visit your grandparents.
4. Going to a theme park.
5. Check list on your car before travelling to a distant place.

PART - III

7. NOTICE WRITING

Marks : 3

- ◇ Notice can be described as a written or a printed information or news announcement.
- ◇ It is written for basically informing people or pupils (in a school) about an activity or an event and is specifically only meant for a select group.
- ◇ Since a notice is a formal announcement or piece of information, its tone and style are formal and it is strictly factual.
- ◇ Its language is also simple and formal.
- ◇ It is important to note that a notice is always, and doesn't include flowery language.
- ◇ The occasions for creating a notice could be a competition, an inauguration to take place in near future or an exhibition. It could also be school activities like an excursion, a meeting or show.

Tips for Writing Notices

- Stick to the specified word limit.
- You need to write the word NOTICE at the top.
- Do not forget to mention the Name and Place of the school, or organization or office that is issuing the notice.
- An appropriate heading is required.
- Include the date of issuing the notice.
- Write the purpose of the notice.
- Mention other relevant details like date, venue and time.
- State that needs to be contacted for extra information.
- The signature, name and designation of the person who is issuing the notice should be there.

Model 1

1. You are Reema/Riteish, the secretary of M.B Higher Secondary School, Thinduivanam. You have been asked to inform students of class IX and XII about an Inter School Dramatics Competition. Draft a notice for the students' Notice board with all the required details in not more than 50 words. Put the notice in a box.

M.B Higher Secondary School, Thinduivanam. NOTICE	
30 July, 2020.	
DRAMATICS COMPETITION – AUDITION	
<p>An Inter School Dramatics Competition will be held on 31-03-2021 at Mother Teresa Hall. An audition will be conducted for selecting students for the school team. Interested candidates can give their names to the undersigned.</p> <p>The details are given below:</p>	
Date : 07-08-2020 Time : 10.30 am	Venue : School Auditorium Eligibility : Class IX and XII
Last date for giving names: 15-03-2021	
Renu, Cultural Secretary.	

Model 2

2. You are Ram / Rani of Carmel Hr. Sec. School, Chengalpet. Write a notice to be put up on the school notice board regarding the upcoming Annual Day Celebration in your school.

CARMEL Hr. Sec. School, Chengalpet NOTICE	
January 5, 2021.	
Annual Day Celebration 2021	
<p>This is to inform all the students that our Annual Day 2021 will be celebrated on January 20, 2020 from 6 pm to 11 pm at the school auditorium with various cultural programmes. Our District Collector will grace the occasion as the Chief Guest. Students who should like to participate in various programmes should contact their respective class teachers on or before January 10, 2021</p>	
Ram, Event in-charge.	

Self - Evaluation

Write notices for the following situations

1. You are Shibin, the head boy of KNP Higher Secondary school, Salem. Your school is soon going to publish the annual magazine next month. Write a notice for your school notice board and invite students to submit write-ups.
2. You are the secretary of your library. The management has made changes in the membership fees and duration to keep the book with you from next month. Write a notice that will be put up on the library notice board and it needs to give all this information to the students.
3. You are Rahul Kannan, head boy of Alexandria convent school, Chennai. Your school is going to organize an inter-school dance competition. Write a notice for your school notice board and invite names of all the interested students.
4. You are Sukan, Secretary of Fine Arts Club of Gandhi Memorial School, Thindugal. The school is planning to organise a drawing completion to classes VI to XII. Write a notice to be put up in the notice board regarding the competition with all the necessary details.
5. You are Raja, Head editor of school magazine of STN Hr. Sec. School, Karur. Your school has planned to publish the school magazine in January. Write a notice inviting articles, poems, tit bits, drawings to be published in the magazine. It should have other necessary details too.
6. Your school is planning to visit an orphanage to donate money and other articles to the inmates. You're the NSS leader of your school. Write a notice regarding this to the students to donate money, dress and other household things. Sign as Nithya/Arun
7. You are the head girl of your school. Your school is planning to conduct a science exhibition in your school only for your school students from VI to XII. Write a notice to be put up in the school notice board regarding this with all the necessary details. Sign as Divya.
8. You are the Sports Secretary of your school. Your school has planned to conduct a football match between your school and another school. Inform this to your school students by writing a notice with all the details so that they will come to watch the match.
9. You are the secretary of your school Book Worms. Your principal is taking the VII and VIII std. interested students to Book Exhibition. Write a notice to get the interested students names to participate in this programme. Don't miss any details. Sign as David/Gaby.
10. You are the head boy of your school. You are planning to conduct a Stamp Exhibition in your school. The participants are all the students of your school. Write a notice to be put up on the notice with all the details. Sign as Sharma

PART - IV**1. NOTE MAKING AND SUMMARY WRITING****Marks : 5**

- ◇ A summary is a condensed version of an article, a speech, a book or a report. Summarising is an important skill. It requires the skill of concentration, comprehension and condensation.
- ◇ Steps to be followed while summarising:
 - Read the passage carefully.
 - Identify the topic sentence.
 - Identify key words and expressions.
 - Compress the sentences into shorter units.
 - Leave out comparisons, examples, etc.,
 - Prepare a rough draft and revise it.
 - Write a fair draft of the summary in a single paragraph.
 - Give a suitable title.

1. Make notes or Summarize the following passage.

I remember my childhood as being generally happy and can recall experiencing some of the most carefree times of my life. But I can also remember, even more vividly, moments of being deeply frightened. As a child, I was truly -terrified of the dark and getting lost. These fears were very real and caused me some extremely uncomfortable moments.

Maybe it was the strange way things looked and sounded in my familiar room at night that scared me so much. There was never total darkness, but a street light or passing car lights made clothes hung over a chair take on the shape of an unknown beast. Out of the corner of my eye, I saw curtains move when there was no breeze. A tiny creak in the floor would sound a hundred times louder than in the daylight and my imagination would take over, creating burglars and monsters. Darkness always made me feel helpless. My heart would pound and I would lie very still so that 'the enemy' wouldn't discover me.

Another childhood fear of mine was that I would get lost, especially on the way home from school. Every morning, I got on the school bus right near my home—that was no problem. After school, though, when all the buses were lined up along the curve, I was terrified that I would get on the wrong one and be taken to some unfamiliar neighbourhood. I would scan the bus for the faces of my friends, make sure that the bus driver was the same one that had been there in the morning, and even then ask the others over and over again to be sure I was in the right bus. On school or family trips to an amusement park or a museum, I wouldn't let the leaders out of my sight. And of course, I was never very adventurous when it came to taking walks or hikes because I would go only where I was sure I would never get lost.

Perhaps, one of the worst fears I had as a child was that of not being liked or accepted by others. First of all, I was quite shy. Secondly, I worried constantly about my looks, thinking people wouldn't like me because I was too fat or wore braces. I tried to wear 'the right clothes' and had intense arguments with my mother over the importance of wearing flats instead of saddled shoes to school. Being popular was very important to me then and the fear of not being liked was a powerful one.

One of the processes of evolving from a child to an adult is being able to recognise and overcome our fears. I have learnt that darkness does not have to take on a life of its own, that others

can help me when I am lost and that friendliness and sincerity will encourage people to like me. Understanding the things that scared us as children helps to cope with our lives as adults.

Note Making:**TITLE: Memories of Childhood**

- I. Remembering childhood moments
happy and carefree
terrified of the dark and getting lost
- II. Childhood fears
- III. Feeling helpless in dark
 - a) Moving curtains
 - b) Creaking sounds
 - c) Creating burglars and monsters
- IV. Fear of getting lost (on the way home from school)
 - a) Scanning of school buses—friendly faces, same bus driver
 - b) Not letting leaders out of sight
 - c) Fear of being disliked
 - d) Overcoming childhood fears

Summary:**Rough Draft****Title : Memories of childhood**

My childhood moment was the happiest and carefree moment. Darkness scared me with its shadows, moving of curtains, and creaking sounds. It created images of burglars and monsters. It made me quite helpless and I used to lie still with a pounding heart. I had the fear of getting lost while on way from home to school. Before getting in school bus, I scanned it for friendly faces. I always kept my eyes on the leaders. I had the fear of being disliked by others. During the course of evolution from a child to an adult, I realised those things that scared me as a child. I was always expecting help from others.

Fair Draft**Title : Memories of childhood**

My childhood moment was the happiest and carefree moment. Darkness scared me with its shadows, moving of curtains, and creaking sounds. It created images of burglars and monsters. It made me quite helpless and I used to lie still with a pounding heart. I had the fear of getting lost while on way from home to school. Before getting in school bus, I scanned it for friendly faces. I always kept my eyes on the leaders. I had the fear of being disliked by others. During the course of evolution from a child to an adult, I realised those things that scared me as a child. I was always expecting help from others.

2. Make notes or Summarize the following passage.

At 3.01 on the morning of August 17, 1999, people living in Izmit, Turkey, were awakened by a terrible fright. An earthquake rocked the area. It registered 7.4 on the Richter scale, which measures quake strength on a scale of 1 to 9 with 9 being the strongest. By the time of the quake and

its aftershocks – quakes that strike after the first quake – finished, 17000 people were dead. More than 120,000 houses were demolished and the roads and railroad system were destroyed.

Quakes, also called tremors, are fairly common in this part of the country, but not all of them are equally destructive. Just three months later, on November 12, a quake measuring 7.2 hit Duzce, Turkey. This tremors was similar in intensity to the Lzmit quake. Yet, while still tragic, its end result was significantly less destructive. At least 700 people were killed and more than 675 buildings collapsed.

Interestingly both quakes struck in different places along the same fault line, or fracture in the earth's crust. Like most earthquakes, these two were caused by a sudden release of pressure along a fault line. The release shifted adjacent blocks of rock under the earth, called tectonic plates, past each other. As a result, waves of energy pushed the land both under and above the ground.

Predictions of where and when an earthquake will strike are impossible to make. There is still a lot of mystery that surrounds the invisible waves that begin underground and force changes on the earth's surface. With each quake, scientists move closer to understanding these earthshaking events.

Note Making:

Title : Earthquake in Turkey

17th dawn, Aug 1999 – people of Turkey – earthquake measuring 7.4 – 17000 people dead – roads, railroads and houses destroyed – all quakes are not destructive – cause – sudden release pressure along a fault line – impossible to predict – scientists learn from earthquake frequency.

Summary:

Title : Earthquake in Turkey

Rough draft:

The 17th dawn of August 1999 was really frightening to the people of Lzmit, Turkey. An earthquake, measuring 7.4 on the Richter scale, hit the area. As a result of the quake and its after shocks, 17000 people were dead. The roads, railroads and more than 1,20,000 houses were destroyed. Quakes, also known as tremors, are quite common in several parts of Turkey. The fact is that all quakes are not destructive. For instance, the Duzce quake of the same intensity like the Lzmit quake was less destructive. Only 700 people were killed and more than 675 buildings were demolished. Both quakes hit along the same fault line. These quakes like several other quakes, were caused by a sudden release of pressure along a fault line. It is always impossible to predict earthquakes. Scientists learn more and more about these earthshaking events with the occurrence of each earthquake.

Fair Draft :

Title : Earthquake in Turkey

The 17th dawn of August 1999 was really frightening to the people of Lzmit, Turkey. An earthquake, measuring 7.4 on the Richter scale, hit the area. As a result of the quake and its after shocks, 17000 people were dead. The roads, railroads and more than 1,20,000 houses were destroyed. Quakes, also known as tremors, are quite common in several parts of Turkey. The fact is that all quakes are not destructive. For instance, the Duzce quake of the same intensity like the Lzmit quake was less destructive. Only 700 people were killed and more than 675 buildings were demolished. Both quakes hit along the same fault line. These quakes like several other quakes, were caused by a sudden release of pressure along a fault line. It is always impossible to predict earthquakes. Scientists learn more and more about these earthshaking events with the occurrence of each earthquake.

Make notes or write summary of the following passage.

Passage I

If you live in a rapidly urbanising India, especially in the North, and feel that things are getting from bad to worse as far as civility, sensitivity and respect for law is concerned, you are not alone. I go out cycling almost every morning, at the crack of dawn. The total lawlessness that has come to grip the society scares me. As early as 5 am, our cycling group notices people huddled around their cars, drinking outside eateries or liquor joints, fighting, arguing loudly, or simply passing lewd comments at the women riders in our group. The comments do not vary from a Mercedes or a Maruti Swift. They are uniformly distasteful. We often see police vehicles at these joints too, and they are certainly not there attending to an SOS call.

Several of you would remember the horrific accident that took place in Gurgaon. Forty seven year old Avinash Shah, driving his small car with his wife and daughter was hit by a businessman test driving a powerful new Audi. Avinash died instantly and his wife and daughter barely survived.

The gent who rammed the big Audi into the small car, is out on bail. According to eye-witnesses, soon after ramming into Avinash's car, this gent got out, made a few phone calls using his mobile, and got picked up by his own driver in his car and vanished. The police said they did not have his address for two days despite knowing that he was on a test drive and had deposited his driving licence at the car showroom before taking the car out. Two days later, this gent reappeared, with a lawyer in toe and surrendered, only to be bailed out in a jiffy.

Why is it that things are reaching such a pass? Sudden wealth, easy availability of 'good things' in life, general feeling that money can buy anything, or what else? Is it just a North Indian phenomenon or nationwide? Why it is that uncouth, uncivil and insensitive behaviour is all pervasive? Why is the society so willing to circumvent, indeed buy, law at will? Do you think the media is responsible having abdicated its responsibilities by concentrating on flashy things alone while bypassing the real issues that would positively impact the society?

Whatever the answer to those questions is, the solution lies with us alone. We need to stop accepting being pushed around. An individual cannot take on those who mock at our law, but together we can do wonders. The choice is ours, whether to stare down the barrel of the gun as lawlessness gains ground faster than these guys drive their fast cars, or start coming together to challenge the perpetrators of these crimes. I have often heard the argument that our economy is growing rapidly and this is just a brief side effect of such growth. I would rather have a slower growth rate of economy, but a saner, civilised society to live in.

Passage II :

An era, a culture is eventually determined by its news. What is missed out by those who track the news of that time is lost forever. We know nothing about Shakespeare's contemporaries even though some of them may have been better playwrights. We know nothing about those who came in with Babar, or around the same time, to loot India and stayed back as rulers. Or the many soldiers of fortune who landed here during the time of the East India Company. We know of a few and, apart from avid historians, no one knows who led the Portuguese, Dutch or French into India or ran their empires here till they were dismantled. Why is that? Simple. The media of that time, known as historians, did not mention them.

We who consume news today see it as a fleeting experience. We observe a powerful image on TV, are moved by its impact or repelled by its horror, and move on. We read a headline today and can't

even recall it tomorrow. Current news always drives out the old (often with ruthless cunning) and it's only when the media goes back in time to recall a particular (7 story that we suddenly remember that, yes, there was something called HDW or Bofors that once shook up the entire nation and held it in thrall for a decade. We are suddenly reminded that Congress treasurer LN Mishra was mysteriously killed in a bomb blast on a train and no one ever knew who killed him or where his secret millions vanished.

Since I'm a journalist I can tell you many such stories. There are others too, full of stories. But, like news, the stories die with them. History only remembers what it chooses to, or what is indelibly stamped on its pages. The rest is occasionally recalled as gossip. But is it gossip? Or is it truth that we are trying to forget so that we can move on and make space in our hearts and minds for more recent news? Our memory, collective as well as individual, has limited storage and however many data cards we may insert, there's simply too much to absorb and retain. The information surge that hits us every morning is so large, so intimidating that we remember only a tiny fraction of it. It's that fraction which actually scares us by the possibility of impacting our lives.

The gap between news and entertainment was always sacrosanct. News was about facts. Entertainment was about imagination, ergo fiction. To see them occupy the same media platforms today is scary for those like me who have spent a lifetime pursuing facts in the search for news. Even the dividing line has blurred. What we once shunned as preposterous lies slip in so casually today into our news menu. It's no one's fault. It's just that the fault lines have shifted. News has become just another consumable, another platform to commercially (and cynically) exploit. No, don't blame our journalists and media owners. They are only following a global model that, for better or for worse, is making our times an entirely forgettable chapter of history.

Passage III :

Guyana is a small country situated in the Northern Coast of South America, on the Atlantic Ocean. People of Indian ancestry form nearly 50 percent of its population. The rest are local Amerindians, and people of European and Chinese descent.

Christopher Columbus is believed to have discovered Guyana in 1498. The Dutch landed there in the late 16th century and the local Amerindians welcomed them as trading partners. But the Dutch became permanent settlers and began ruling the country. Britain took over the country in 1796, and ceded the country with Great Britain and named it British Guyana in 1831. In 1834, slavery was abolished, and thousands of indentured labourers were brought from India, Portugal and China to replace the slaves working in sugarcane plantations. Two ships from Calcutta carried the Indians.

The *Whitby* sailed with 249 people on 13th January 1838 and arrived in Guyana on 5th May. The *Hesperus* left 6 days later with 165 passengers and arrived in Guyana late on the night of 5th May. Today the country's population is nearly 8,00,000 in an area of 214,969 sq.km. The average population density for Guyana is less than four persons per sq.km.

Its capital is George Town and is the home of nearly 1,50,000 people. It is the national capital and a major sea port. The country's economy is largely based on sugar, rice, coffee, bauxite, shrimps, livestock, cotton, molasses, timber and rum. Guyana enjoys a literacy rate of nearly 99 percent.

Indians have contributed a great deal to the country's development. Dr. Cheddi Jagan became the first Premier of British Guyana. He also served as the President. Bharat Jagdeo was sworn in as President in 1999. Famous Guyanese of Indian origin include Rohan Babulal Kanhai, veteran cricketer and Sreedath Ramphal, former Secretary General of the Commonwealth.

Passage IV :

The elephant is the largest and one of the most powerful and intelligent animals. Even though blue whales are the largest animals for they grow upto 30 metres, elephants top the list as far as land animals are concerned. A fully-grown elephant reaches a height of 4 metres and a weight of 6 metric tons.

The most remarkable feature of the elephant is its tusks and trunk. The tusks, in fact, are two of its upper teeth that have grown on the outside and become enlarged. A tame or trained elephant uses its tusks to support heavy loads while wild elephants use them as weapons of attack. Tusks are made of ivory which is highly valuable. And it is for tusks that elephants are hunted down and killed. Even though articles made of ivory are banned in most countries they are available in the black market, and this leads to elephant poaching.

The trunk is another interesting feature of the elephant. It serves as an arm and a hand for picking up twigs and leaves and pushing them into its mouth. The trunk is actually the elephant's lengthened nose and upper lip. It is thick and well-protected on the outside but has a tender inside.

There are two kinds of elephants - the Asian elephant and the African elephant. The Asian elephant is relatively smaller than its African counterpart. While the Asian elephant is 2.75 metres tall and weighs 3.5 metric tons, the African is 3.5 metres tall and weighs about 5 metric tons, and is darker than the Asian species. Moreover, the Asian elephant can be easily tamed or trained and it sleeps lying down while the African elephant is wild and sleeps upright.

Passage V :

A good book, among many things can fetch us mental, physical and spiritual satisfaction. The invention of printing press, and its gradual improvements have enabled the book-publishers to flood the markets with innumerable varieties of books and thus leading to knowledge-explosion in different fields. Books enlighten us and keep us better informed. Books are our best friends and companions. Through them we get a chance to live with the people of the past, share their rich thought and ideas, gain from their experiences and improve our aspirations. Through their influence man becomes refined, his mind becomes disciplined, frank and just. Adopting the words of Cardinal Newman, it can be said, that books mould a person into a gentleman, make him tender towards the absurd, and deter him from inflicting pain on others.

It is shocking to learn from the recent findings of UNESCO, that in our country, book-reading averages 32 pages per year, as against the prescribed 2000 pages per year. The number of dailies and weeklies is a very impressive figure. Yet the average circulation is nowhere near the world average. Not even one in a thousand reads newspapers regularly. The National Book Development Board, a wing of the Ministry of Human Resource Developments, has been doing wonderful work, yet it has not been successful in infusing reading habits in the general public.

Therefore, it becomes clear that reading habit should be initiated at the school level. The teachers at school and the parents at home are required, to bestow utmost care and attention. They are duty-bound to fulfill their obligation. A teacher should help students to choose the right type of book and a parent has to encourage the child to read books during leisure hours. In this way, both of them can work wonders. But in practice, the parents shift their responsibility, saying that their children learn only from their teachers. In reality a child responds to its mother or father much better.

PART - IV**2. LETTER WRITING****Marks : 5****Response Letters**

A response letter provides the answers or information requested in a letter of inquiry. The objective is to satisfy the reader with an action that fulfills their request. Take into account that your reader may like to get a crisp reply. Keep your response on point and avoid going beyond the scope of the reader's request.

Identify Your Reader

A response letter should be addressed to a person from whom a request or inquiry has been received. That person's name will be found in the complimentary close of a previous inquiry letter and should be placed in the inside heading and the salutation of your response. It should also be included on the top line of your envelope.

The objective of a response letter is to satisfy the reader with an answer or action that fulfills the request of an inquiry. The answer either informs the reader of the respondent's ability to provide information or of a willingness to act on their behalf in some other way.

Determine Your Scope

The scope of a response letter is contained in the information you provide for the specific purpose of helping the reader grasp your objective. You may safely assume that your reader is a busy person, so getting to the point is important. Your goal is to have the reader make a decision quickly and respond in a timely manner. Information that is not related to your objective should be left out.

Give them the relevant background information needed in order to make an informed decision. Let the reader know who you are and something about your motive. If you are to receive some benefit, it may help to explain for what purpose the benefit will be used. If the reader is to receive some benefit, it may help to offer an incentive to respond.

Organize Your Letter

Organizing your response letter will establish a logical order in which to present your information. You have already begun this task by establishing an objective and determining your scope. Refer back to them. Together they include much of the content that will become the body of your letter.

A simple outline will get you organized. Begin by creating a list of points that your letter will address and put them in the sequential order that will best help your reader comprehend your response. These points will become the backbone of your draft; your outline will become a checklist.

Textual Exercises

Write a letter explaining what is asked in the question.

Answer to this is almost a response letter.

1. Read the following letter carefully, discuss with your partner and answer the questions.

Sir,

I request you to publish the following letter in your daily to address an important issue which needs immediate redressal.

During week-ends motorcyclists are seen racing on the East Coast road and the Old Mahabalipuram road of Chennai. The amateur racers are risking their own lives and of the public as well. They are fearless and irresponsible, not knowing the price of human lives. Risking others and their lives for their pleasure is highly condemnable.

Even school students indulge in such activities and cause fatal accidents. The racers have started occupying the lanes and streets of busy localities. As such, the violation of traffic rules results most of the time in loss of young lives. Such reckless riders who violate traffic rules should be punished severely.

As a responsible citizen of the society, I request the authorities concerned to take appropriate measures to put an end to this menace.

Yours truly,
Srivatsav.

Questions:

a) **Who is the sender of the letter?**

Srivatsav is the sender of the letter.

b) **Who is the receiver?**

The editor of a daily is the receiver.

c) **What is the issue?**

Motorcycle racing is the issue.

d) **What is the request of the sender?**

The request of the sender to the authorities concerned is to take appropriate measures to put an end the motorcycle racing.

e) **Who will take steps after reading it?**

The traffic police, the authorities concerned will take steps after reading it.

2. **You have chosen Computer Science in the Higher Secondary Course. Write a letter to your friend giving reasons for your choice. Read the clues given in brackets to complete the letter.**

Dear Sunder, (Greeting),

Hope you are doing well. (enquire about his well being). I would like to say that I have chosen Computer Science in the Higher Secondary Course. Firstly I want the course to help me for my future. (reason for your choice of group). I wish to become a Computer Science Engineer...(state your ambition). We come to hear a lot of wrong ideas and anti- social elements spoiling the society. (discuss recent unhealthy happenings in social media and the society). These have made me select the course so that after knowing the system well I will be able to find out something to stop such things. (demand or need of this profession). I have plans to pursue MS from US. (higher studies or specialization).

All the best for your CA preparation. Convey my regards to all at home.

(your name)
David

3. You had been to your Grandma's house during summer holidays. You enjoyed your stay in her company. Write a letter to your Grandma stating how much you miss her after returning to your place.

24, Arunai Colony,
Yercaud.

July 8, 2020.

Dear Grandma,

I hope you are doing well and your knee pain is ok now. I thank you for the wonderful time I had with you during my summer holidays. The place itself is wonderful but your affection and concern made my stay very pleasant. Our walk around the garden is memorable and I will cherish such experience throughout my life. You made me plant 10 saplings and I watered them every day. The green fields around the house are still in my mind. It was a fine experience to watch the harvesting process. It was a real learning for me. Now I miss you a lot. I am waiting for my next chance to be with you.

Yours lovingly,
Ramesh.

4. You are the Head of the English department in a renowned institution. You are invited to preside over the inauguration of English Literary club in your alma mater. Respond to the letter you have received either accepting the invitation or expressing your inability to attend the function.

From

Prof. Rajendran,
H O D English,
St. Mary's College of Arts and Science,
Thindugal.

August 27, 2020

To

Principal,
Alpha Higher Secondary School,
Erode.

Respected Sir,

I was very happy to receive the invitation from you to inaugurate Literary Club in our school. It is my pleasure to visit my alma mater after 22 years. I am sure I will have nostalgia when I visit the school. I am happy to accept the invitation and it is my pride to visit my alma mater.

Yours faithfully,
Rajendran.

5. Write a letter to the Headmaster of a school requesting him to help you obtain a duplicate mark sheet of class, which you had lost while travelling. (You had completed standard XII)

From

Kannan G,
21, Amirtha Colony,
Thruchenkodu,

July 21, 2020.

To
The Headmaster,
Govt. Higher Secondary School,
Thiruchenkodu.

Respected sir,

Subject : Requisition for duplicate mark sheet.

I was a student of your school in 2012 doing my Std XII – First Group. My name is G. Kannan. My class no. was 12 and my exam register no. was 6759231. I am sorry to inform you that I lost my mark sheet when I was travelling to Chennai. I made a complaint to the railway police and an FIR copy is attached with this letter. I request you to give a duplicate mark sheet.

Thanking you,

Yours faithfully,
Kannan.

6. **Write a letter to AZ Company requesting them to replace the defective juicer that you bought recently. Include the following details: the problem, date of purchase, receipt number, model and warranty.**

From
Rajkumar S,
34, II Cross Street,
NSN Colony,
Viruthunagar.

July 15, 2020

To
The Manager,
AZ Company,
Market Street,
Viruthunagar.

Sir,

I bought a juicer from your shop on 13th July 2019. Now I have found out that it is very defective and I cannot use it at all. The actual problem is in its motor. So I want you to change this and give me a new piece.

The following are the details about the juicer.

1. Date of purchase : July 13, 2019.
2. Receipt No. : J 92340
3. Model : 45562
4. Warranty : one year

Please do the needful to exchange the juicer.

Thanking you,

Yours faithfully,
Rajkumar.

7. You wish to become a pilot. Write a letter to the college enquiring details of a Pilot training course offered by the college. Include the following details in your enquiry: duration of the course, fee structure, scholarships, hostel facilities and placement details.

From

S. Saravanan,
12 – III cross street,
NSK Township,
Salem.

March 8, 2020.

To

The Dean of Studies,
VST College of Technology,
Salem Main Road,
Karur.

Sir,

I have completed BE in Aeronautical Engineering. Now I am interested to pursue a course in Pilot Training. I am happy to know that you have a training centre in your college.

I would like to know some details about the following.

- a) Duration of the course
- b) Fees structure
- c) Any scholarship available. If so what are the requirements?
- d) Hostel facilities
- e) Placement details

Will you please provide details for the above at the earliest?

Thanking you,

Yours faithfully,
Saravanan.

8. Write a letter to the manager of Waves Furniture Company ordering furniture for a coaching centre. Include the following details: description of the furniture, number of pieces, mode of payment, time and delivery options.

From

N. Malika,
24 – III Cross Road,
N S K Coaching Centre,
Nagercoil.

June 22, 2020

To
The Manager,
Waves Furniture Company,
Bridhavan Road,
Tirunelveli – 3.

Sir,

Sub: Order for furniture items.

We are in need of some furniture for our coaching centre. I am giving the details of the required furniture.

- i) 2 office table – 3 x 4 with three drawers in the right side
- ii) 2 executive chairs
- iii) 40 students' writing table – 2 x 3
- iv) 40 chairs for the students

You can suggest the mode of pavement. Delivery can be done via parcel service. If you need any other details please contact me.

Thanking you,

Yours faithfully,
Malika.

9. **Write an application for the post of Personal Secretary to the Managing Director of a company. Include the following details: Educational qualification, experience, various other qualifications required for the post.**

From

G. David,
12 – Selvanagar,
K T Colony,
Salem 12.

June 11, 2020

To

The Managing Director,
Rainbow Industries,
Coimbatore – 17.

Sir,

Sub : Application for the post of Personal Secretary.

I completed my MBA with HR as my specialization in 2015. I have come to know that you have a vacancy for the post of Personal Secretary. As I have the requisite qualification and experience. I would like to apply for the post. I am giving a short resume of mine.

Name: : G. David
Mobile No. : 9444788736
Father's Name : Gerald

Address : 12, Selva Nagar, K.T. Colony, Salem - 12.
 Age and Date of Birth : 26 yrs and 01.01.1994
 Educational Qualification : B.A English Literature from Madras University – 2013
 MBA from Madras University – 2015
 Experience : 1. SNF Industries, Erode for 2 years
 2. Gupta Metal Services, Madurai for 1 year
 3. Fine Boards Info, Trichy – till now
 Other qualifications : Tally completed
 Computer knowledge in Microsoft office – Words, Excel, PPT.
 Salary expected : ₹ 30,000/- per month.
 Joining time : can join in two days.

If I am give a chance to work under you I will do my best to the satisfaction of my superiors.

Thanking you,

Yours faithfully,
David.

10. Write a letter to the Editor of a newspaper about the nuisance created by the roadside vendors blocking the pavements and occupying the parking zone.

From

V. Andrews,
7, West Street,
Arasar Colony,
Erode 2.

July 14, 2020.

To

The Editor,
The New Indian Express,
Chennai - 600001.

Sir,

Sub: Nuisance created by the roadside vendors.

I request you to publish the following letter in your daily to address an important issue which needs immediate redressal.

Many roadside vendors occupy the road side for their business. It is accepted that they too need a place to sell their goods and earn their living. But it should not be at the risk of others' life. In our area most of the vendors have taken the parking zone for their business. So the two wheeler riders have no proper place to park their vehicles. They park their vehicles in such a way that it gives trouble to the pedestrians and other cars and autos. So the municipal authorities should take necessary action to solve this problem.

Thanking you,

Yours faithfully,
Andrews.

11. Write a letter to your relative or friend who is admitted in hospital for treatment of jaundice. Advise him/ her not to worry about the illness and be positive. Assure him/her of your psychological and financial help during the crisis.

32 – Wavers' Colony,
Salem – 13.

August 14, 2020.

Dear Aunt,

I am sorry to hear that you have been admitted in hospital for the treatment of jaundice. It is heartening to know that you are improving day by day. These days jaundice is not a very dangerous disease. The important point is that it should be diagnosed properly. In your case it was done well and your case is not the B type. So you need not worry about it. I am sure you will be out of hospital within a few days. Of course you have to be careful about your food hereafter. Your liver should not be affected again. I am sure people at home will take care of you. You have to take rest some time. You can come home and stay with us for a month or so. If you have any financial crunch please let me know. It will be taken care of. We all pray for your speedy recovery.

Yours lovingly,
James.

Self - Evaluation

- Write a letter to the editor expressing your views about child labour / unemployment / crime against women / habits of smoking / problems arising due to increasing population / drug addiction, etc.
- You bought a mobile handset from Union Mobiles. One of the salesman's behaviour was very bad and it hurt you. Write a letter to the manager regarding your hurt feeling. Explain to him his bad behaviour.
- You received a letter from a company that you had not paid the EMI. But actually you paid it in time. Write a letter to the company explaining the date on which you paid and the mode of your payment and the acknowledgement you have from the company.
- You ordered some books for your school library one month back with a book shop. Still you have not received them. Write a reminder to the manager quoting the previous letter of order, the date, the names of the book with a request to send them immediately.
- You have decided to go on an educational tour with your class students. Write a letter to a tourism company requesting them to send you details of some tour package. Give them the details of your choice of number of days and the preferable month.
- You lost your wallet on the train. You haven't found it yet. Write a letter to the station master of the local train station in about 150 words. In your letter
 - Describe your wallet and what was in it.
 - Request information about their lost and found service.
 - State what action you want the station master to take.
- You recently went to the opening ceremony of a book fair and you saw the chief guest who was a well-known writer. Write a letter to your friend describing
 - the visitor
 - what happened on that day
 - whether it will be successful

8. You got an invitation from a friend to attend his birthday party. But you have some urgent work to do on that day. Write a letter to him explaining your inability to attend the party. Give him the details of the work you have to do on that day.
9. You are Gayathri / Ganesh. Write a letter to your friend Sanjana / Sanjay, inviting her / him to your birthday party. Give details regarding the day, time, venue, etc. Add interesting details like theme, dress code, etc.
10. Your cheque book is over. Write an application to the bank manager to issue a cheque book. Give the following details.
a) types of account b) account number c) account holder's name

PART - IV**3. PARAGRAPH WRITING****Marks : 5**

Write a paragraph of 150 words on the given topic.

Paragraphs comprise of sentences, but not random sentences. A paragraph is a group of sentences organized around a central topic. In fact, the cardinal rule of paragraph writing is to focus on one idea. A solidly written paragraph takes its readers on a clear path, without detours. Master the paragraph, and you'll be on your way to writing "gold-star" essays, term papers, and stories.

A basic paragraph structure usually consists of five sentences: the topic sentence, supporting sentences, and a concluding sentence. But the secrets to paragraph writing lay in four essential elements, which when used correctly, can make an okay paragraph into a great paragraph.

1. Unity.

Unity in a paragraph begins with the topic sentence. Every paragraph has one single, controlling idea that is expressed in its topic sentence, which is typically the first sentence of the paragraph. A paragraph is unified around this main idea, with the supporting sentences providing detail and discussion. In order to write a good topic sentence, think about your theme and all the points you want to make. Decide which point drives the rest, and then write it as your topic sentence.

2. Order.

Order refers to the way you organize your supporting sentences. Whether you choose chronological order, order of importance, or another logical presentation of detail, a solid paragraph always has a definite organization. In a well-ordered paragraph, the reader follows along easily, aided by the pattern you've established. Order helps the reader grasp your meaning and avoid confusion.

3. Coherence.

Coherence is the quality that makes your writing understandable. Sentences within a paragraph need to connect to each other and work together as a whole. One of the best ways to achieve coherency is to use transition words. These words create bridges from one sentence to the next. You can use transition words that show order (first, second, third); spatial relationships (above, below) or logic (furthermore, in addition, in fact). Also, in writing a paragraph, using a consistent tense and point of view are the important ingredients for coherency.

4. Completeness.

Completeness means a paragraph that is well-developed. If all sentences clearly and sufficiently support the main idea, then your paragraph is complete. If there are not enough sentences or

enough information to prove your thesis, then the paragraph is incomplete. Usually three supporting sentences, in addition to a topic sentence and concluding sentence, are needed for a paragraph to be complete. The concluding sentence or last sentence of the paragraph should summarize your main idea by reinforcing your topic sentence.

Textual Exercises

Page 160

Write a paragraph of about 150 words on the following topics.

a. The teacher I like most

Our teachers are all our role models whom we are fortunate to follow. Among them is our English teacher, Ms. Gita, who is patience personified. She radiates confidence and composure. Her command over English is outstanding and we are spell-bound by her oratorical skill. She teaches us English adopting innovative techniques. She teaches grammar using audio-visual aids that make us understand difficult concepts easily. Her smile is infectious, and our dullness and tiredness will vanish the moment she enters our class room. She is pro-active and guides us in all possible ways. She handles the late bloomers patiently. Many a time I have seen her helping some poor boys by rendering financial support. So I like my English teacher the most as she is an inspiration to the students.

b. The values of discipline

Discipline is the practice of strict rules that controls an activity or situation. It is essential in any atmosphere for maintaining orderliness. The objectives of any institution or organisation can be realised only through a disciplined approach. There will arise utter chaos if discipline is thrown to the winds. Discipline makes learning smooth in educational institutions. It makes the subordinates perform their duties in accordance with the directions of their senior officers. The progress of the country depends on its disciplined citizens. Law and order is maintained by the disciplined police. The army should carry out the order of the commanders in a disciplined way. It is essential for a stress-free family life. There is no doubt that discipline builds harmony, strengthens unity and fosters co-operation.

c. Need for Moral Education in schools

The decay and degeneration being witnessed in the present day society is mainly due to lack of moral values among people. Disregard for law, disrespect for the elderly, selfishness, greed, corruption etc. are eating into the vitals of a civilized society. To remove all these negative qualities from the society, it is important that the schools come forward to inculcate moral values in the children. Today's children are tomorrow's citizens. So, they must learn moral values and adopt them in their day-to-day life so that others will be put to shame and change their way of life. As parents and other agencies have little patience to teach them moral values, the need should be felt by the schools only. Since in the formative years it is easy to impress the children, schools should explore all the avenues to prioritise moral education.

d. The importance of good health

'Sound mind in sound body' goes the saying. Without good health we cannot lead our lives happily. Ill-health brings pains and sufferings. It prevents us from achieving our goal because all the time worrying about health will be spoiling our health. The sick person becomes mentally depressed. Even day-to-day activities cannot be taken up on account of failing health. Good health is

an asset to a person who may be hit with financial problems. Swami Vivekananda says that we can be nearer to God by playing football rather than by reading the Bhagavat Gita. Inner peace can be attained out of good health. Good health creates a positive outlook and brings confidence. It builds up stamina, agility and vigour and vitality. Good health leads to a brisk and bustling life.

e. The importance of Reading

“Think before you speak but read before you think” is a famous quote on the importance of reading. Books are our never failing friends. They make us cheerful, enthusiastic and energetic. We wipe out our ignorance by reading books. We become better informed and make wise choices. Reading books makes us effective communicators. We acquire problem-solving and decision – making skills. They motivate us to do our best in everything. Creativity is stimulated by reading the books of great minds. Our sorrows and sufferings are lessened by reading books. We come into communion with great souls and our character is elevated and ennobled. Margret Fuller says, “Today a reader, tomorrow a leader.” The book titled ‘Civil Disobedience’ changed the thinking of Gandhiji and gave him the most potent weapon, non-violence. As Bacon says, ‘Reading makes a man.’

Exercise with Answer

Write a paragraph of about 150 words on the following topics.

1. Brain drain

‘Brain Drain’ is the migration of talented persons like doctors, engineers, lawyers, teachers and technicians from their home country to a foreign country for higher remuneration and better working conditions. It is a troublesome problem for developing countries like India which cannot pay high salaries and curtail the individual’s personal freedom permitted in democracies. The reason behind the brain drain is that the foreign countries encourage over the import of the talented manpower. On the other hand, the owners inheriting such brains are happy to go out because of having congenial work atmosphere and ethos. In case of brain drain India is a big loser. The Indian Government should give proper recognition to higher level doctors, engineers and teachers. If we make the atmosphere healthier for some good work, at least some of the brains may stay back in the country.

2. Atmosphere

The atmosphere is a transparent envelope of gases and suspended particles that surround the Earth. Without chemical processes involving several of the atmospheric gases, life could not exist. Even the physical processes that operate in the atmosphere are of vital importance because they are responsible for the Earth’s varied climate. The atmosphere is composed almost entirely of oxygen and nitrogen. The atmosphere is the source of every living thing in the world. It plays a very important role in serving the world’s needs. It provides ventilation to the earth, as the atmosphere filters the ultraviolet rays, coming from the sun. Thus, it acts as the Earth’s protective armour without which all living things in the world would die. The ozone layer is a matter of tremendous concern as it profoundly influences the environmental conditions on the planet’s surface. The atmosphere provides the air we breathe in the food we eat, the water we drink and above all it supports LIFE. Atmosphere is very imperative to sustain life on earth.

3. Childhood, the best part of life

Old people say that childhood is the best part of life. They look back at their childhood and remember all the happy days. Perhaps these old folks are right. And yet they forget many things that were not so pleasant in their childhood. There is a funny story that tells of a boy who was crying

because he had to go back to school after the holidays and the father scolded him and said, “Why, I only wish I could be a boy and go to school again.” And all in a moment, the father was a little boy and his son was a grown-up man like his father. And the father, in the shape of a little boy, had to go to school. A child’s troubles may seem small to grown-ups but they were very big to him.

4. Computer today

The computer is an electronic device made of electrical wires and circuits. The computer has literally ‘revolutionised’ the ways of people as it is used almost in all fields. The computer can be called a mechanical brain because it has the memory power like a human brain. Speed and accuracy are the two key factors of the computer. It is used to make one’s work done with minimum effort, but with maximum efficiency. This ‘magical’ machine can do anything unimaginable. Computers are useful in numerous fields. Almost all newspapers have online editions. Nowadays banking and business operations are computerized. In industries, computers operate the machines. Computer helps easy and quick identification of criminals by matching their finger prints and identifying voice patterns. Weather forecasts are computer dependent. Now teaching and learning of lessons are made easy with the help of computers. Internet is a storehouse of information. Nowadays, the examination results are published through the Internet. In roadways, railways and airways, booking of tickets is done with the help of the Internet. E-mail has replaced the conventional letter as a means of communication. It drives away the traditional time-consuming letter writing and saves time for the writer as well as the receiver. E-mail makes communication almost instant and cheap.

5. Science – a boon or bane

The lifestyle of the modern man is vastly different from that of the ancient man. Modern man is ensconced in the lap of luxury and comfort. Thanks to the influence of science and technology, modern man could enjoy every moment of his life. The ancient man was not accustomed to SMS, cyber cafe and fast food. True, it has made him live like an angel, but it has also made him think like a Satan. One cannot avoid the question. “Is science a boon or bane?” Hope this essay will find a convincing answer to the question. Mixi, grinder, fridge, washing machine, microwave oven, vacuum cleaner - these are some names which the ancient women had never heard of. Air-conditioners and room-heaters have made our stay at home a pleasant and satisfying one. But for the influence of science, mankind would not have developed by leaps and bounds. At the same time, science has metamorphosed man into a machine. As a result of the influence of science, human values are gradually vanishing. For instance, people, in the thick of watching TV, forget all other things. Children are almost slaves to computer games. Thus their natural growth and personality development are curbed. Worse than all these things is the threat posed by scientific weapons of mass destruction.

6. Television and its impact

Television is one of the types of media that nearly everyone owns or views. It was invented by John Baird. In recent years, the influence of television has dramatically increased, following the expansion of channels. It is said to be the best means of entertainment and education. Television is one of the most popular mass media. It serves as a window to the world and brings us news, entertainment, and information. Television not only gives its viewers the opportunity to watch a sporting event, but also allows them to feel as if they were physically present in the stadium. Television renders an invaluable service in the field of education. There are programmes devoted to specialised subjects. Channels like Animal Planet help us to know a lot of wonderful things concerning the world of fauna. It provides an outlet for creative talents. Though TV has brought in welcome changes, it also accounts for countless evils. It affects the physiological, psychological, emotional and ethical part of

our life. It corrupts the regular function of our minds. It paves the way for cultural invasion. Thus it is right to call TV an 'idiot box'.

7. The influence of mass media

'Mass media' are the means of communication that reach and influence a large number of people. This includes various methods of transmitting news and information to a large number of people through Newspapers, Television, Radio, Movies, Advertisement, the Internet, etc. Communication has made the huge world shrunk into a small global village. Radio plays a prominent role in educating as well as entertaining people. It has revolutionized every nook and cranny of our country. There is a widespread service of the All India Radio stations in all cities of India. This is controlled by digital broadcasting using GSAT satellite. Now it has been replaced by the television, an audio-visual aid. Television is the biggest type of media as nearly everyone owns or views a television. In recent years television medium has dramatically increased, following the expansion of channels. This means that television now appeals to a wider audience. In short, television has been an integral part of our lives. The newspaper is a common tool of communication. "Too much of anything is good for nothing". It has a lot of adverse effects on the society. Children, who keep watching TV and playing computer games for hours, gradually get their IQ affected and creativity crippled.

8. Deforestation

Of all living beings created by God, human being is the worst and ultimate epitome of the word 'selfishness'. Man goes on destroying all other existing beings for his selfishness. The worst of all is deforestation. The process of felling trees in forest areas is called deforestation. It is a universal fact that forests invite the water-concealed clouds to pour down rain upon the earth. We never hesitate to destroy the rain-donors, i.e. the forests. Pandit Jawaharlal Nehru insisted upon his countrymen to plant 100 saplings when a tree is cut down. Unfortunately, we fail as a mass to plant even one sapling when we cut down more than hundred trees. A country should possess at least one-third of forest area in its total area. India fails to meet this norm due to many reasons. This disgraceful practice of deforestation has been carried out for several years. Valuable trees like teak and sal are felled for the construction of houses and making furniture. Other trees are also felled indiscriminately for fuel and charcoal. Forests are destroyed mainly for the construction of dams, factories, buildings and for laying roads and railway tracks. The problem of deforestation must be checked at once. People must be encouraged to plant more saplings.

9. Rain water harvesting

Rain water harvesting means collecting rain water and storing it underground for later use. Rain water harvesting involves collection of rain water, filtration and recharge of rain water into the ground. Rain water is the main source of water. Rain water gets into the soil and reaches the water table. We make use of this ground water by digging wells and bore wells. Recently the ground water level is going down at an alarming rate. In order to prevent this, we should harvest rain water. India receives a good rainfall during monsoon. But most of the water falling on the surface runs off into gutters and rivers. It leaves only a very little amount of water to get into the water table. This leads to water scarcity. To prevent this, the runoff water should be allowed to get into the soil. Thus the surplus rain water can be harvested. The world is heading towards a water crisis due to natural and man-made hazards.

10. Environmental Pollution / Global warming

Man is polluting the environment intentionally or ignorantly. The undesirable change in the properties of air, water and soil is called pollution. It harms the health and life of the

humanity. Pollution is one of the evils brought about by the growth of science and technology. Man is responsible for polluting the air, water and land by adding impurities to them. Air is essential for our life. We breathe in oxygen from air. Our health depends on the quality of air we breathe in. Factories and industries let out smoke. Toxic gases found in the smoke pollute the air. The intake of polluted air causes diseases like lung cancer, asthma and nervous disorders. Due to this pollution, the ozone layer gets depleted. It results in the entry of harmful ultraviolet radiation into the earth causing diseases like skin cancer. Global Warming is the increase of Earth's average surface temperature due to effect of greenhouse gases, such as carbon dioxide emissions from burning fossil fuels or from deforestation, which trap heat that would otherwise escape from Earth. This is a type of greenhouse effect. No life is possible without water. Pure drinking water is necessary for the healthy survival of humanity. Water gets polluted when toxic and acidic wastes are disposed of into it. So let us make the earth green and clean.

11. Importance of Sports and Games

"All work and no play makes Jack a dull boy". This famous saying highlights the importance of sports and games. Apart from studies, sports and games play a pivotal role in developing the personality of a student. Sports and games bring up children with the confidence to take on the challenges in this competitive world. Sports and games build up a good physique and healthy mind. Sports and games transform a block – head into a blazing star. Sports and games are offered to the students at the primary level itself. These children take part in sports and games every evening. Thus students are subjected to stretching and contracting muscles which is really good for health. Indoor games like chess and carom and several asanas and mass drills also form the part of the curriculum. Apart from ensuring a healthy body and an active mind, sports and games offer plenty of benefits to students. Sports and games are meant to develop togetherness and understanding among the sportspersons. The essence of sports and games is to nurture certain noble qualities that will help us to overcome cultural, political, social and racial obstacles. Thus sports and games play an important role in moulding the true citizens of the country.

12. Conserve water; save life

Water is one of the nature's precious gifts to mankind. All living things consist mostly of water. For example, the human body is of two thirds of water. Water is the most essential component of life and is vital for sustenance. The importance of water in our diet is apparent as it helps the body to perform specific metabolic tasks and regulates our body temperature. Moreover water is unique as its density is similar to that of cell protoplasm. It is the key component in determining the quality of our lives and is a universal solvent. We should teach children to turn off faucets tightly after use and adjust sprinklers to water the lawn. We should collect water used for rinsing fruits and vegetables to water house plants. It is advisable to wash our pets outdoors in an area of our lawn that needs water and repair leaking pipes and harvest rain water. Water is known as the elixir of life. So conserve water to save life.

13. Electrical Safety Measures

Electricity is a controllable and convenient form of energy, a phenomenon that is the result of the existence of electrical charge. Electricity is expressed by the amount of charge flowing through a particular area in unit time. It is generated in power stations and sent across the country along with cables carried on towers called pylons. Electricity is a necessity to modern civilization. In industry, manufacturing relies on electricity to drive virtually all moving parts and can be converted into light, heat and magnetism. Scientific inventions like portable batteries and memory sticks have made the world worth living. The electric printing press has given us newspapers, magazines and

books. In order to ensure safety in and out of our homes, we should ensure to turn off the lights and unplug all electrical appliances like TV, computers etc. because they consume electricity for some time even when turned off. We should be careful not to leave electrical cords where people might step on them. It is better to be away from areas marked with signs that read "Danger: High Voltage." It is advisable to avoid excessive illumination and never use water to put out an electrical fire and never climb utility poles and fences around electrical plants. We should always put away electrical appliances and power tools immediately after use.

14. How to be prepared for Natural Disasters.

A natural disaster is a major event resulting from turbulent natural processes of the Earth. It causes a great loss of life and property. During such disasters, the number of people who are rendered, houseless is more than the number of people who lose their lives. Even the economy of the region which faces a natural disaster, gets effected. It is true that a natural disaster is a natural process and we cannot stop it but by making certain preparations, we can reduce the magnitude of the loss to life and property. First of all we should reduce global warming which is the root cause of all the problems. We should also have insurance policies so that we could have sufficient money to rebuild our lives after any such disaster. The scientists should invent advance warning systems. Regarding construction, we should make sure that it is strong enough to withstand earthquakes. We should educate people about evacuation during any disaster. Hence, by taking some precautions we can cope with the natural disasters.

15. Population Explosion

The enormous increase in the population of a country is called population explosion. World population has already exceeded 6 billion in 2000. According to a report by the United Nations Population Fund, the total population is likely to reach 10 billion by 2025. Though India ranks second in population, it has the highest density of population in the world. India's population is growing at an alarming rate. India alone has a population of more than one billion, in spite of the fact that India is the first country in the world to have a population policy. There are several factors that contribute to the high growth rate of population. In the past, short life span of people limited population growth. In today's world, the rate of death has decreased to such an extent that it creates a rapid increase in the population in many countries. This was achieved by improved nutrition, sanitation, and medical care. This resulted in excess population. Over population creates many problems like lack of adequate food, adequate drinking water, shelter, education and employment. It leads to depletion of natural resources, increased levels of pollution, deforestation and loss of ecosystems, changes in the atmospheric composition, global warming etc. Population education should be a subject for study in schools and colleges to develop an awareness of the population problems. The urgent need of the hour is family planning.

16. My Ambition in Life

All of us want to achieve greater heights of success. What we want to become is called ambition. It is a person's ambition that drives him or her towards the pinnacle of glory. But, mere ambition is not enough. Our ambition must be backed up by constant efforts to achieve it. My ambition in life is to become a teacher. This may surprise the readers as most of the students are craving for admission into professional courses. There are plenty of reasons for my choice. One third of the population in India is illiterate. Unfortunately, these people dwell in absolute ignorance. They are governed by superstitions. By becoming a teacher, I will be able to eradicate their illiteracy and illuminate their minds with knowledge. Another important reason for my choice is that teaching profession is one of the noblest professions. It will enable me to serve the cause of education in rural

areas. Moreover the students of today are the citizens of tomorrow. By becoming a teacher, I can definitely contribute to the development of our nation.

17. Mother Teresa

Mother Teresa' was born on 26 August 1910 at Skopje, Macedonia. Her real name was Agnes Gonxha Bojaxhiu. She was the youngest child of Nikollë and Dranafilë Bojaxhi. Her father died in 1919 when she was only eight years old. Agnes was fascinated with missionaries from an early age, and by 12 she knew that she would commit herself to a religious vocation. When she was 18, she left home and joined the Sisters of Loreto in Rathfarnham, Ireland. Mother Teresa committed to be a nun in 1931 and chose the name Teresa to honour patron saints of Australia and Spain. In 1950, she founded the Missionaries of Charity, a Roman Catholic religious congregation dedicated to serve "the hungry, the naked, the homeless, the crippled and the blind. Mother Teresa was honored with many awards throughout her life. In the year 1979, Mother Teresa was honored with the 'Nobel Peace Award'. She later received 'Bharat Ratna' (India's highest civilian award) in 1980. Mother Teresa died on 5 September 1997 at the age of 87 in Calcutta, West Bengal, India. Her death stunned millions of people all over the world. She was given a state funeral and was laid to rest at Mother House in Calcutta. She is still alive in our hearts and Mother Teresa quotes still inspire us.

18. Mobile Phones

Mobile or cell phones have revolutionized our lives. In the past, people had to wait for days or weeks to get reply to their letters. Then with time and technological advancements things started getting easier with the invention of telephone and then finally it got a lot easier with the introduction of cell phones. But high-end mobile phones have also turned out to be handy devices for anti-social elements. It all depends on how we use this smart and handy gadget. One can use cell phones in any disastrous situation and emergencies to get help. Some of the mobile phones have special features like maps etc. There are a number of applications like calculator, torch, calendar etc. in every cell phone. These packages and apps are worthy enough as compared to wired or land line phone charges. But there are some drawbacks of this gadget. It is a fact that parents allow their kids to use mobile phones at an early age. But it is only to make sure about their safety and security. However, it has been observed that these children do not make use of it in a proper manner. They spend hours talking to their friends, not for good purposes but to gossip and thus waste their time. Burglars and criminals can plan out a number of criminal activities using mobile phones. Thus cell phone is a blessing in one way but they can create disasters in our lives and society the other way.

Self - Evaluation

Write a paragraph of about 150 words on the following topics.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| 1. A day at the beach | 10. If I were an English Teacher |
| 2. A great day with a friend | 11. Women empowerment |
| 3. A paragraph on adventure | 12. The most exciting day in your life |
| 4. Honesty is the best policy | 13. Technology for the differently abled |
| 5. Importance of education | 14. Dengue menace |
| 6. The teacher you like most | 15. Road safety Drive |
| 7. Students and Social service | 16. Pleasure of early morning walk |
| 8. Values of music | 17. AIDS Awareness Programme |
| 9. Competitive Examinations | 18. Dangers of Plastics |

19. Your favourable hobby
20. National Integration
21. Rain water harvesting
22. Your leisure time activities

23. Child Labour
24. Save Energy
25. Prevention is better than cure

PART - IV**4. SEMANTIC FIELDS****Marks : 5**

- ◇ In linguistics, a **semantic field** is a set of words grouped semantically (by meaning) that **refers** to a specific subject.

Textual Exercises

Page 119

Match the following with their right field choosing appropriately from the box given.

Machinery, Sports, Transportation, Geography, Weather, Travel

- snow-board – sports
 snow-mobile – transportation
 snow-chains – machinery
 snow-storm – weather
 snow-bird – travel
 snow-belt – geography

Exercise with Answer

Identify each of the sentence with the fields given below.

- I
1. Spicy food can cause acidity in the stomach.
 2. Sania Mirza advanced to the third round of the US Open.
 3. India will test fire another missile next week.
 4. Wordsworth's poems are very famous.
 5. The flight was cancelled due to fog.

(Weather, Defence, Sports, Nutrition & Dietetics, Literature)

Answer : 1. Nutrition & Dietetics 2. Sports 3. Defence 4. Literature 5. Weather

- II
1. The ozone layer protects us from the UV rays.
 2. Anju George has won several medals in the long jump event.
 3. COBOL and FORTRAN languages are used.
 4. The Democratic Party made a clean sweep in the recent elections.
 5. Jet Airways has reduced the airfare very much.

(Computer, Travel, Environment, Sports, Politics)

Answer : 1. Environment 2. Sports 3. Computer 4. Politics 5. Travel

- III
1. My uncle is going to undergo a surgery.
 2. An island is a land part surrounded by water on all sides.
 3. Bread and butter makes a tasty breakfast.
 4. The new film became a box office hit.
 5. The State Government is trying to achieve Education for all.
(Entertainment, Medicine, Geography, Education, Food)

Answer : 1. Medicine 2. Geography 3. Food 4. Entertainment 5. Education

- IV
1. You have to obtain passport to go abroad.
 2. The rain will continue for the next two days.
 3. Kapil Dev is known as Haryana Hurricane.
 4. A new machine has been invented to detect fake notes.
 5. Fruits are rich in vitamins.
(Science, Sports, Nutrition, Travel, Weather)

Answer : 1. Travel 2. Weather 3. Sports 4. Science 5. Nutrition

- V
1. 'India Today' has published an article on this issue.
 2. Add coriander leaves for flavour.
 3. Rathore won the silver medal in the 2004 Olympic Games.
 4. The renovation of the temple is going on.
 5. The Entrance Examination will be held next month.
(Religion, Media, Education, Sports, Cooking)

Answer : 1. Media 2. Cooking 3. Sports 4. Religion 5. Education

Self - Evaluation

Identify each of the sentence with the fields given below.

- I
1. K.L. Rahul is brought back to one day cricket after two years.
 2. Rainfall occurred at a few places over coastal Karnata.
 3. Tamilnadu farmers are reluctant to invest in drip irrigation.
 4. Oscar award winner A.R. Rehman was appreciated by the Chief Minister.
 5. Syllabi for equitable standard school education will be finalised next month.
(Weather, Agriculture, Education, Music, Sports)

Answer : 1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____

- II
1. The ISRO launched seven rockets last year.
 2. The new MLA s will be sworn in next week.
 3. Carrot is rich in vitamin A.
 4. Virat Kohli reached the top of the ranking.
 5. We stayed in a motel in Darjeeling.
(Sports, Politics, Travel, Space, Nutrition)

Answer : 1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____

- III** 1. It was a thrilling win for Saina Mizra.
 2. Palestenians have decided to go to polls.
 3. A new software is adopted to make operations easier.
 4. This oil massage will refresh you a lot.
 5. Britney Spears will release a new album next month.
 (Music, Computer, Politics, Sports, Health)
 Answer : 1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____
- IV** 1. Mr. S.K. Prasad passed away last night.
 2. We are trying to manage viral diseases with black pepper.
 3. Another bid is made to attract foreign investments.
 4. Dravid calls for better pitches.
 5. Young girls impressed with their artistry in Margam style.
 (Sports, Business, Agriculture, Art, Obituary)
 Answer : 1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____
- V** 1. It is going to be the closest election ever fought in Tamil Nadu.
 2. A magazine has been published to help work-life balance.
 3. Fossil proof of human evolution has been found.
 4. Arsenal and Liverpool split points.
 5. The High Court adjourns the case to next week.
 (Archeology, Law, Sports, Politics, Literature)
 Answer : 1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____
- VI** 1. Free books will be supplied to all students.
 2. Pascal adding machine is the first mechanical machine.
 3. The students displayed their inventions at the exhibition.
 4. King Asoka ruled for thirty seven years.
 5. R.D. Sugar Mills plans Rs. 300 crore expansion.
 (History, Business, Education, Computer, Science)
 Answer : 1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____
- VII** 1. Akira's album has bagged four Grammy Awards.
 2. He is running a mercy home in Salem.
 3. A new drug for heating the dreaded virus.
 4. A vast stretch of sand is called desert.
 5. Deforestation leads to soil erosion.
 (Medicine, Music, Environment, Social Service, Geography)
 Answer : 1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____
- VIII** 1. Harsha extended his empire from Punjab to Bengal.
 2. The mouse is an input device.
 3. Sahul Thakur performed a hat-trick against West Indies.
 4. By 2008, all schools will be equipped with computer.
 5. Indian paints achieved a profit of Rs. 500 crore last year.

(Education, History, Commerce, Computer, Sports)

Answer : 1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____

- IX**
1. Bombay Jayashree is a famous singer.
 2. After a long and tedious walk we reached the top of the hill after nightfall.
 3. The hybrid variety of crops yield more.
 4. The sensex in Mumbai Stock Market crossed 10,000 points last week.
 5. A lot of people visit Ooty every year.

(Agriculture, Tourism, Commerce, Music, Trekking)

Answer : 1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____

- X**
1. India is marching towards 0% illiteracy
 2. She is planning to visit the US on tourist visa
 3. Owing to recession, value of shares came down.
 4. E-governance has reduced the usage of paper.
 5. Monsoon rains cheered up prospects of good harvest.

(Travel, Computer, Commerce, Agriculture, Education)

Answer : 1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____

PART - IV

5. PARAGRAPH TOPICS

Marks : 5

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| 1. The teacher I like most | 14. Deforestation |
| 2. The value discipline | 15. Rain water harvest |
| 3. Need for moral education in school | 16. Environmental pollution / Global warming |
| 4. The importance of good health | 17. Importance of sports and games |
| 5. The importance of reading | 18. Conserve water; save life |
| 6. Books and reading | 19. Electrical safety measures |
| 7. Brain drain | 20. How to be prepared for natural disaster |
| 8. Atmosphere | 21. Population explosion |
| 9. Childhood the best part of life | 22. My Ambition in life |
| 10. Computer today | 23. Importance of discipline |
| 11. Science – a boon or bane | 24. Mother Terrassa |
| 12. Television and its impact | 25. Mobile phones |
| 13. The influence of mass media | |

PART - IV**6. SPOT THE ERROR****Marks : 5****How to spot the error?**

- ◇ In this section, you will be given sentences with errors .
- ◇ Read the sentences carefully and find the errors. Errors are generally tested in the following areas.
 - Articles
 - Numbers (singular and plural)
 - Usage of tenses
 - Usage of adverbs and adjectives.
 - Question tags
 - Conjunctions
 - Prepositions
 - Usage of wrong words
 - Usage of conjunctions
 - Word order
 - Conditional clauses
 - Concord (agreement of the verb with its subject)

I. Articles:

- ◇ **Rule 1:** Words like one, university, universal, useful, unique, union, European are preceded by the article 'a'. They do not begin with a vowel sound.

Incorrect	Correct
I saw an one-eyed-man.	I saw a one-eyed man.
My brother is an university rank – holder.	My brother is a university rank - holder.
He made an universal appeal.	He made a universal appeal.
It is an useful advice.	It is a useful advice.
An European invented this machine.	A European invented this machine.

- ◇ **Rule 2:** Half is followed by the article 'a'.

Incorrect	Correct
I have taken half day leave.	I have taken half a day leave.
I bought half litre of milk.	I bought half a litre of milk.

- ◇ **Rule 3:** Abbreviations beginning with L / M / N / S / F / H are preceded by the article 'an'.

Incorrect	Correct
Mr. Susai is a LIC agent.	Mr. Susai is an LIC agent.
Sheela is a M.A., in English.	Sheela is an M.A., in English.
Mr.Nazar is a N.R.I. living in America.	Mr.Nazar is an N.R.I. living in America.
I want to make a STD call to Mumbai.	I want to make an STD call to Mumbai.
He bought a H.M.T. watch yesterday.	He bought an H.M.T. watch yesterday.

- ◇ **Rule 4:** Words like hour, honest, honourable etc. are preceded by the article 'an'.

Incorrect	Correct
Ramesh played for a hour.	Ramesh played for an hour.
Balu is a honest boy.	Balu is an honest boy.
Dr. Shylu is a honourable person.	Dr. Shylu is an honourable person.

- ◇ **Rule 5:** Definite article 'the' is used before
- superlative degrees. (the most ... the tallest, ...)
 - unique objects (the sun, the moon, the earth etc.)
 - rivers (The Cauvery)
 - seas (The Arabian sea)
 - mountain ranges (The Himalayas)
 - group of islands (The Maldives)
 - musical instruments (The guitar)
 - holy books and epics (The Bible, The Ramayana)
 - directions (the east)
 - world wonders and historical monuments (The Taj Mahal)
 - countries with plural status (The USA)

Incorrect	Correct
Ram is most intelligent boy in our class.	Ram is the most intelligent boy in our class.
Earth is a planet.	The earth is a planet.
Nile is the longest river in Egypt.	The Nile is the longest river in Egypt.
Pacific Ocean is the deepest ocean in the world.	The Pacific Ocean is the deepest ocean in the world
He lives in Andaman Islands.	He lives in the Andaman Islands .
She plays violin excellently.	She plays the violin excellently.
David reads Bible everyday.	David reads the Bible everyday.
The sun rises in east.	The sun rises in the east.
Have you ever seen Taj Mahal?	Have you ever seen the Taj Mahal ?
USA recovered from the stock market crash.	The USA recovered from the stock market crash.

- ◇ **Rule 6:** Suitable article should be placed if the sentence is wrong due to omission of article.

Incorrect	Correct
I have headache.	I have a headache.
India defeated South Africa by innings.	India defeated South Africa by an innings.

- ◇ **Rule 7:** Generally proper nouns and languages do not take any article before them.

Incorrect	Correct
She can speak the Hindi.	She can speak Hindi.
My friend resides in the Chennai.	My friend resides in Chennai.

- ◇ **Rule 8:** Words like prefer, inferior, superior, prior, senior, junior, exterior, interior, anterior, posterior should be followed by the preposition 'to' and not by 'than'.

Incorrect	Correct
I prefer coffee than tea.	I prefer coffee to tea.
Mohan is senior than Guru.	Mohan is senior to Guru.

- ◇ **Rule 9: i)** Difference in the usage of between and among:
between : distribution involving only two persons/things.
among : distribution involving more than two persons /things.

Incorrect	Correct
There is no friendship among Kala and Mala.	There is no friendship between Kala and Mala.
The brokers shared the profit between themselves.	The brokers shared the profit among themselves.

- ii) Difference between the usage of besides and beside.
beside : by the side of
besides : in addition to

Incorrect	Correct
I can speak English beside Hindi.	I can speak English besides Hindi.
There is a Church besides our school.	There is a Church beside our school.

- iii) Difference between the usage of after and behind
after : used with time
Behind : used with place

Incorrect	Correct
I never do any work behind 10 p.m.	I never do any work after 10 p.m.
My school is after the temple.	My school is behind the temple.

- iv) Difference between the usage of since and for
since : refers to a specific time (in the perfect continuous tense)
for : refers to a period of time (in the perfect continuous tense)

Incorrect	Correct
It has been raining since five hours.	It has been raining for five hours .
He has been working here for 2001.	He has been working here since 2001

- v) Difference between the usage of on and upon
on : refers to things at rest
upon : refers to things in motion.

Incorrect	Correct
My book is upon the table.	My book is on the table .
The cat jumped on the wall.	The cat jumped upon the wall .

- vi) Difference between the usage of in and into
in : refers to things at rest
into : refers to things in motion.

Incorrect	Correct
My ID card is into my bag.	My ID card is in my bag.
She jumped in the well.	She jumped into the well.

- vii) Difference between the usage of by and with
by : used before a doer / person
with : used before instrument / object.

Incorrect	Correct
The letter was posted with Raja.	The letter was posted by Raja.
Brutus stabbed Caesar by a dagger.	Brutus stabbed Caesar with a dagger .

- ◇ **Rule 10 :** 'Known' is followed by 'as' while 'called' should not be followed by 'as'

Incorrect	Correct
Patel is known the Iron man of India.	Patel is known as the Iron man of India.
The Camel is called as the ship of the desert.	The Camel is called the ship of the desert.

- ◇ **Rule 11 :** Some verbs will take their own prepositions only.

Example : listen to, congratulations on, hope for, arrive at, succeed in, rather than, leave for, suffer from, knock at, meet with, good at, poor in, confident of / about, sympathise with etc.

Incorrect	Correct
He is leaving to Chennai tonight.	He is leaving for Chennai tonight.
Anand is suffering with fever.	Anand is suffering from fever.
I listened the music of Ilayaraja.	I listened to the music of Ilayaraja.
Santhosh knocked the door.	Santhosh knocked at the door.
Raja met in an accident.	Raja met with an accident.
Ramesh is good in English.	Ramesh is good at English.
Suresh is poor at Mathematics.	Suresh is poor in Mathematics.
He is confident on his success.	He is confident of his success.
They have been accused for the murder.	They have been accused of the murder.
The Principal is angry on you.	The Principal is angry with you.
I always sympathise for the poor	I always sympathise with the poor.

- ◇ **Rule 12 :** The verbs discuss, describe, order, regret, request, stress and emphasize are transitive and therefore they cannot be used with prepositions.

Incorrect	Correct
He discussed about the matter yesterday.	He discussed the matter yesterday.
I have ordered for a cup of coffee.	I have ordered a cup of coffee.
He requested for my help.	He requested my help.
They described about the scenery.	They described the scenery.
We regret for the inconvenience.	We regret the inconvenience.

- ◇ **Rule 13 :** Some verbs generally do not take prepositions.

Incorrect	Correct
She entered into the room.	She entered the room.
He accompanied with his friends to Ooty.	He accompanied his friends to Ooty.
He told to me that he was busy.	He told me that he was busy.
I have answered to all their questions.	I have answered all their questions .

- ◇ **Rule 14 :** Some more errors we commonly commit in prepositions.

Incorrect	Correct
I came by walk.	I came on foot .
Smoking is injurious for health.	Smoking is injurious to health.
He was listening to the music between 1 p.m. to 3 p.m.	He was listening to the music between 1 p.m. and 3 p.m.
The children were sitting below a tree.	The children were sitting under a tree .
Water boils on 100°C.	Water boils at 100°C.
Several dams were built over the river.	Several dams were built across the river.
The bridge is being built on the Cauvery.	A bridge is being built over the Cauvery.

III. Concord (Subject - verb agreement)

- ◇ **Rule 15 :** Nouns coming after the phrases like One of the..., Some of the..., None of the ..., Each of the ..., Very few of the...etc. should be in plural form only.

Incorrect	Correct
One of his brother is in America.	One of his brothers is in America.
None of the student scored good marks.	None of the students scored good marks.
Each of the player performed well.	Each of the players performed well.

- ◇ **Rule 16 :** Two nouns connected to a singular subject using 'with', as well as', 'in addition to', 'together with', 'along with', take a singular verb only. When either... or, neither nor and are used, not only but also the second noun decides the number as singular or plural

Incorrect	Correct
The Principal as well as the staff are present.	The Principal as well as the staff is present.
Cotton as well as jute have fallen in price.	Cotton as well as jute has fallen in price.
Neither Kamala nor Vimala are intelligent.	Neither Kamala nor Vimala is intelligent.
The teacher along with the students go for a picnic every year.	The teacher along with the students goes for a picnic every year
The house with its contents were insured.	The house with its contents was insured.
Neither Ram nor his friends is in the class.	Neither Ram nor his friends are in the class.

- ◇ **Rule 17 :** Words like Physics, Civics, Politics, Linguistics, Statistics, Mathematics, News and Economics are singular and so they take a singular verb only.

Incorrect	Correct
Physics are my favourite subject.	Physics is my favourite subject.
The news are very good.	The news is very good.

- ◇ **Rule 18 :** Acronyms are considered as singular and so they take a singular verb only.

Incorrect	Correct
AIDS are the most dreadful disease.	AIDS is the most dreadful disease.
The UNICEF carry out a lot of noble	The UNICEF carries out a lot of noble
Service for the protection of children.	service for the protection of children.

- ◇ **Rule 19 :** When two subjects express a single idea, they take a singular verb.

Incorrect	Correct
Slow and steady win the race.	Slow and steady wins the race.
The cup and saucer are placed on the table.	The cup and saucer is placed on the table.
Bread and butter make a wholesome breakfast.	Bread and butter makes a wholesome breakfast.
Early to bed and Early to rise are good habit.	Early to bed and Early to rise is a good habit.
Greed and grief go hand in hand.	Greed and grief goes hand in hand.
Honour and glory are his reward.	Honour and glory is his reward.
The ebb and flow of the tide are due to the lunar influence.	The ebb and flow of the tide is due to the lunar influence.

IV. Number: (singular and plural)

- ◇ **Rule 20 :** Words like 'luggage', 'furniture', 'baggage', 'deer', 'staff' 'information' etc. are always singular. They should never be used in plural form.

Incorrect	Correct
We bought a lot of furnitures.	We bought a lot of furniture .
The staffs gathered for the meeting.	The staff gathered for the meeting.
Raj followed his wife carrying the luggages. We have got all the informations from our boss.	Raj followed his wife carrying the luggage. We have got all the information from our boss.

- ◇ **Rule 21 :** Phrases like a lot of..., some of ..., plenty of ..., most of ..., etc. are singular when they are followed by any uncountable noun but they are plural when they are followed by a countable noun.

Incorrect	Correct
A lot of work are to be finished by me.	A lot of work is to be finished by me.
A lot of students is attending the seminar.	A lot of students are attending the seminar.

- ◇ **Rule 22 :** Some nouns such as police, people, cattle, livestock, children etc are already in plural form. So it is wrong to add - s / -es to them to make plural forms. They take plural verbs only.

Incorrect	Correct
The cattles are grazing.	The cattle are grazing.
The police is in search of the criminal.	The police are in search of the criminal.

- ◇ **Rule 23 :** The plural forms for son-in-law and passer - by are sons-in-law and passers-by respectively.

Incorrect	Correct
I have two son-in-laws.	I have two sons -in-law.
Several passer-bys have seen it.	Several passers-by have seen it.

- ◇ **Rule 24 :** Words like sheep, dozen, scenery, scissors, trousers etc. should be used as such both in singular and plural forms.

Incorrect	Correct
About forty sheeps followed the shepherd.	About forty sheep followed the shepherd.
He bought three dozens mangoes.	He bought three dozen mangoes.

The beautiful sceneries attracted the tourists.	The beautiful scenery attracted the tourists.
Get me a scissor from the tool box.	Get me a pair of scissors from the tool box.

- ◇ **Rule 25 :** The plural forms of mouse, louse, man etc are mice, lice, men respectively.

Incorrect	Correct
I saw a cat chasing two mouses.	I saw a cat chasing two mice .

V. Conjunctions:

- ◇ **Rule 26 :** Both the co-ordinate conjunction and the sub-ordinate conjunction should not occur in the same sentence.

Incorrect	Correct
Though he is rich, but he is humble.	Though he is rich, he is humble. (or) He is rich but he is humble.
As the boy was weak, so he could not run fast	As the boy was weak, he could not run fast. (or) The boy was weak, so he could not run fast.

VI. Word Order:

- ◇ **Rule 27 :** Adverbs like 'always', 'frequently', 'never', 'hardly', 'often', 'rarely', 'seldom', 'scarcely', 'mostly', 'sometimes' etc. are placed before the verb if it is an action verb and are placed after the verb if it is a 'be' verb.

Incorrect	Correct
The trains often are late.	The trains are often late.
The opposition party supports rarely the ruling party.	The opposition party rarely supports the ruling party.
My friend always is cheerful.	My friend is always cheerful.
I read always in the morning.	I always read in the morning.

VII. Tenses:

- ◇ **Rule 28 :** Present form of verbs, coming after III person singular subject, must take -s/-es/-ies with them.

Incorrect	Correct
Asha sing songs everyday.	Asha sings songs everyday.
Everyday he went to temple.	Everyday he goes to temple.
He buys a TV this morning.	He bought a TV this morning.
Kishore has arrived yesterday.	Kishore arrived yesterday.
He is reading the newspaper daily.	He reads the newspaper daily.
Everyone fights their battle.	Everyone fights his / her battle.
He reads a short story now.	He is reading a short story now.

- ◇ **Rule 29 :** The clause coming after 'as if' should take the verb 'were'.

Incorrect	Correct
He behaves as if he is rich.	He behaves as if he were rich.

VIII. Conditional Clauses:◇ **Rule 30 :**

- i. For general truth both the clauses have present tense.
- ii. When we have present tense in the 'if clause' the main clause will have 'will', 'may', or 'can'.
- iii. When we have past tense in the 'if clause', the main clause will have 'would', 'could', or 'might'.
- iv. When we have past perfect in the if clause the main clause will have 'would have', 'could have', or 'might have'.

Incorrect	Correct
If it rains, we would cancel the match.	If it rains, we will cancel the match.
If you heat ice, it will melt.	If you heat ice, it melts .
If I was the Flash, I would travel around the world in seconds.	If I were the Flash, I would travel around the world in seconds.
If he had come on time, we would permit him.	If he had come on time, we would have permitted him.

IX. Questions tags:

- ◇ **Rule 33 :** Sentences with words like neither, none, nobody, rarely, scarcely, hardly, seldom, little and few are treated as negative statements. So, they are followed by positive question tags.

Incorrect	Correct
Barking dogs seldom bite, don't they?	Barking dogs seldom bite, do they?
We rarely go to movies, don't we?	We rarely go to movies, do we?

- ◇ **Rule 34 :** Sentences with subjects like 'everyone', 'everybody', 'some of' etc. carry plural tags.

Incorrect	Correct
Everyone has a rose, doesn't he?	Everyone has a rose, don't they?

- ◇ **Rule 35 :** The question tag for 'I am' is 'aren't I?' or 'ain't I?'

Incorrect	Correct
I am a teacher, amn't I?	I am a teacher, aren't I?

X. Usage of correct words / expression◇ **Rule 36 :**

Incorrect	Correct
returned back	came back / returned
awaiting for	waiting for / awaiting
popular among the people	famous among the people / popular
cousin brother / sister	cousin
aim to	aim at

- ◇ **Rule 37 :** Some verbs like have, own, possess, belong, want, like, understand, appeal, seem, etc. should not be used in progressive (continuous) tense.

Incorrect	Correct
I am wanting a pen.	I want a pen.
He is possessing a new car.	He possesses a new car.

Textual Exercises

Page 73

Spot the errors in the following sentences and rewrite them correctly.

- My grandfather is well-known in the village for his nobel deeds.**
My grandfather is well known in the village for his noble deeds.
- I had my evening meals in a restaurant near my office.**
I had my evening meal in a restaurant near my office.
- The Boss had full confidence on his Manager for successful completion of the project.**
The Boss had full confidence in his Manager for the successful completion of the project.
- After the complicated surgery, the patient hoped of complete recovery.**
After the complicated surgery the patient hoped for complete recovery.
- The new health care scheme announced by the Government will bring relief to the children suffering with acute tuberculosis.**
The new health care scheme announced by the Government will bring relief to the children suffering from acute tuberculosis.
- In spite of his poverty and setbacks, he was able to launch his dream carrier.**
In spite of his poverty and setbacks, he was able to launch his dream career.

Identify the errors in each of the following sentences and rewrite them correctly.

Page 187

- Either Shyam or Ram have to pay the fine.**
Either Shyam or Ram has to pay the fine.
- Abdul as well as Karim deserve praise.**
Abdul as well as Karim deserves praise.
- Ten thousand rupees a month are an insufficient income.**
Ten thousand rupees a month is an insufficient income.
- Many a student were awarded at the function.**
Many a student was awarded at the function.
- Neither Veena nor his sisters has been informed of the accident.**
Neither Veena nor his sisters have been informed of the accident.
- Mithra as well as her daughters enjoy singing.**
Mithra as well as her daughters enjoys singing.
- You, who is my friend, should help me.**
You, who are my friend, should help me.
- My scissors is missing.**
My scissors are missing. (or) My pair of scissors is missing.

9. A variety of pleasing objects charm the eye.

A variety of pleasing objects charm the eye.

10. Sixty miles are a long distance.

Sixty miles is a long distance.

Exercise with Answer

Read the following sentences, spot the errors and correct them.

	Exercises	Answers
I	1. The sceneries in Ooty are very good.	The scenery in Ooty is very good.
	2. Every student is expected to finish their work in time	Every student is expected to finish his / her work in time.
	3. Neither Raja nor Pooja were selected for the post.	Neither Raja nor Pooja was selected for the post.
	4. Politics are not liked by my father.	Politics is not liked by my father.
	5. The earth revolves round sun.	The earth revolves round the sun .
II	1. Either of the pens write well.	Either of the pens writes well.
	2. Many a student have completed the homework.	Many a student has completed homework.
	3. He is one of the richest man in our town.	He is one of the richest men in our town.
	4. He has passed his B.Sc., in 1998.	He passed his B.Sc., in 1998.
	5. Ram as well as his father are working in a school.	Ram as well as his father is working in a school.
III	1. After returning from the temple, they found their baggages missing.	After returning from the temple, they found their baggage missing.
	2. One of the deers ran fast.	One of the deer ran fast.
	3. Everyone in my class like Science.	Everyone in my class likes Science.
	4. An honesty is the best policy.	Honesty is the best policy.
	5. Ms. Ramya is a M.P.	Ms. Ramya is an M.P.
IV	1. He presented me a HMT watch.	He presented me an HMT watch.
	2. Soup is served prior than the meal.	Soup is served prior to the meal.
	3. In spite of a severe headache, yet he attended the examination.	In spite of a severe headache, he attended the examination.
	4. Owing to the heavy rain and the shops were closed.	Owing to the heavy rain, the shops were closed.
	5. The quality of the books are not good.	The quality of the books is not good.
V	1. Leaning tower of Pisa is a remarkable architecture.	The Leaning tower of Pisa is a remarkable architecture.
	2. The ISRO have launched several rockets.	The ISRO has launched several rockets.
	3. He returned back from Mumbai yesterday.	He returned from Mumbai yesterday. (or) He came back from Mumbai yesterday.
	4. If I was a ghost, I would scare away all the people in my town.	If I were a ghost, I would scare away all the people in my town.

	5.	My brother is elder than me.	My brother is elder to me.
VI	1.	Cow is a useful animal.	The cow is a useful animal.
	2.	One of my friends have left for the U.S.	One of my friends has left for the U.S.
	3.	He called me as a fool.	He called me a fool.
	4.	The principal as well as the staff conduct the exam strictly.	The principal as well as the staff conducts the exam strictly.
	5.	We reached Mumbai in train.	We reached Mumbai by train.
VII	1.	Time and tide waits for none.	Time and tide wait for none.
	2.	Slow and steady win the race.	Slow and steady wins the race.
	3.	I am having a test this evening.	I have a test this evening.
	4.	Ganges is the longest river.	The Ganges is the longest river.
	5.	He took up gymnastic when he was eight years old.	He took up gymnastics when he was eight years old.
VIII	1.	My all hopes are duped.	All my hopes are duped.
	2.	I am in hurry.	I am in a hurry.
	3.	Each of these students sing a song.	Each of these students sings a song.
	4.	Every cloud has silver lining.	Every cloud has a silver lining.
	5.	He gave me an advice.	He gave me some advice.

Self - Evaluation

Read the following sentences, spot the errors and correct them.

- I**
1. I prefer South Indian food than Chinese food.
 2. Kolkata is one of the most populous state in India.
 3. Neither of the books are good.
 4. The leader as well as his followers were arrested.
 5. My house is situated besides the Anjaneyar temple.
- II**
1. All my luggages has been weighed.
 2. Bharath walked for a hour.
 3. I have just had my meals.
 4. Sindhu is an university student.
 5. One of the test tubes in the box are broken.
- III**
1. The Manager gave us some useful informations.
 2. The Cauvery as well as the Vaigai flow through Tamilnadu.
 3. Though the sum was difficult but he solved it.
 4. The Principal with all the teachers are present.
 5. The January is the first month.
- IV**
1. Diploma in computers is an one-year course.
 2. They were discussing about cricket.
 3. The members of our team is very efficient.
 4. As it rained so we did not go shopping.
 5. Though he is sick but he attends the classes.

- V
1. Neither I nor my brother are happy.
 2. He is a doctor, is he?
 3. Ooty is one of the hill resort in Tamilnadu.
 4. The sun sets in west.
 5. I am overwhelmed with his sense of humour.
- VI
1. He refused to answer to me.
 2. One of the books are costly.
 3. He is junior than me.
 4. Though Karan was intelligent but he failed in the examination.
 5. Sagayam is a M.A., in English.
- VII
1. If it rained we cannot go out.
 2. I don't travel with heavy luggages.
 3. One of the officers have got a car.
 4. Everyone in the class learn English well.
 5. We listen the music.
- VIII
1. I play the cricket.
 2. He has gone to England last week.
 3. Though he was rich yet he was not happy.
 4. Fifty metres are not a long distance.
 5. I bought three dozens apples.
- IX
1. Harichandra was a honest man.
 2. If you worked hard you will pass.
 3. He has been searching his pen.
 4. Politics are interesting.
 5. Though Hari is poor but he is honest.
- X
1. A bunch of roses are seen in the garden.
 2. Though Balu was skilled but he could not thrive.
 3. Ganges is a holy river.
 4. We reached Chennai by Ravi's bike.
 5. I prefer coffee than tea.
- XI
1. Ravi is inferior than Satheesh in games.
 2. I met an European last week.
 3. One of the boy secured the highest mark.
 4. I saw a man in glasses.
 5. Though the meal is tasty but I do not like it.
- XII
1. A honest man is always respected by people.
 2. The man is mortal.
 3. Though he worked hard but he could not succeed.
 4. One of my friend had left for Australia.
 5. The recent floods have caused heavy damages.

PART - IV**7. HOMOPHONES****Marks : 2**

- ◇ **Homophones** are two **words** that sound the same, but have different meanings.
- ◇ So the **words** “two” and “too” are **homophones**, as are “ate” and “eight.”
- ◇ There are plenty of homophones in English.

Some homophones are given below for our reference.

No.	Homophones	Meanings	No.	Homophones	Meanings
1.	altar	a raised platform for sacrifice	39.	root	part of the plant inside the earth
	alter	change		route	way
2.	assent	approval	40.	right	correct
	ascent	an upward slope		write	draw or mark on paper
3.	bail	permission to be out of the court	41.	sale	to sell
	bale	a large bundle		sail	travel in a boat or ship
4.	berth	a place assigned in a train or ship	42.	soar	move high
	birth	being born		sore	wound
5.	bow	lower one's head	43.	sew	stitch
	bough	branch of a tree		sow	spread seeds
6.	canvas	thick cloth	44.	stair	flight of steps
	canvass	persuade to vote		stare	look seriously
7.	ceiling	upper surface of a room	45.	stationary	without movement
	sealing	keep a seal		stationery	articles like paper, pencil
8.	check	looking into something	46.	storey	a floor or level of a building
	cheque	bank written order for money		story	a piece of fiction
9.	cite	quote	47.	team	a group of members forming one side
	site	location		teem	great number
10.	course	something to study	48.	vain	unsuccessful
	coarse	thick and hard		vane	one of the blades forming part of the wheel of a windmill
11.	complement	complete something	49.	waist	the narrow part of the body between the ribs and the hips
	compliment	praise		waste	use something thoughtlessly
12.	decease	death	50.	wait	stay in one place
	disease	sickness		weight	heaviness of an object

13.	dessert	something to eat after a meal	51.	ail	to feel unwell
	desert	a sandy wasteland		ale	beer
14.	dew	drops of water due to snow	52.	allowed	permitted
	due	expected to happen		aloud	audible voice
15.	duel	formal fight between two people	53.	ate	took food
	dual	capacity for two		eight	number
16.	fair	reasonable and just, light coloured	54.	aural	hearing
	fare	amount charged		oral	using spoken form
17.	fowl	bird	55.	bald	without hair
	foul	wrong		bawled	cried noisily
18.	gait	way of walking	56.	band	group musicians playing together
	gate	movable barrier for closing a wall		banned	prohibited
19.	hail	small pellets of ice	57.	baron	a powerful businessman
	hale	healthy		barren	incapable of producing
20.	heal	cure	58.	beach	area around the sea or lake
	heel	back part of the foot		beech	a tree
21.	herd	flock	59.	blew	moved by air
	heard	listened		blue	colour
22.	hoard	hiding money or food	60.	boar	wild pig
	horde	very large crowd		bore	made a whole with a drill
23.	night	darkness	61.	break	to separate
	knight	heavily armed soldier		brake	slow down or stop a vehicle
24.	lessen	make something less	62.	cell	a device to produce electrical energy
	lesson	instruction in a subject		sell	to exchange for money
25.	loan	money lent for a period	63.	cast	depositing a vote
	lone	without companion		caste	hereditary classes
26.	maid	a female servant	64.	crews	people who work in a ship or aircraft
	made	produced		cruise	a sail taken for pleasure
27.	mail	post	65.	descent	downward slope
	male	boy/man		dissent	disagree
28.	meat	flesh of animal	66.	die	cease to exist
	meet	to come to the same place		dye	colour

29.	minor	one who is below certain age	67.	rite	ceremony
	miner	one works in a mine		right	correct/direction
30.	oar	a pole to move a boat	68.	earn	to gain in return for work
	ore	mineral from which valuable substances can be extracted		urn	vessel used to keep ashes of the dead
31.	pail	bucket	69.	faint	lack brightness
	pale	whitish		feint	misleading movement
32.	pain	physical discomfort	70.	feat	skillful action
	pane	a sheet of glass in a window or door		feet	plural of 'foot'
33.	peace	silence	71.	flour	powder from grains
	piece	a separate bit or part		flower	part of the plant
34.	peal	a long loud echoing sound	72.	gilt	thin layer of gold
	peel	remove the skin		guilt	feeling sorry after doing something wrong
35.	price	cost	73.	cymbal	a musical instrument
	prize	reward		symbol	picture / shape representing an idea.
36.	principle	a moral rule guiding personal conduct	74.	him	objective case of 'he'
	principal	important		hymn	song
37.	quiet	silent	75.	idol	statue for worship
	quite	to a greater than average extent		idle	doing nothing
38.	rain	water falling from cloud			
	rein	control			

Textual Exercises

Fill the blanks with suitable Homophones or Confusables.

- wallet valet
- fairy ferry
- medal model
- wait weight
- yoke yolk
- grown groan
- earn urn

- hoard horde
- desert dessert
- night knight
- sweet sweat
- plain plane
- might mite
- quite quiet

Given below is a list of common confusables. Distinguish the meaning of each pair of words by framing your own sentences.

Page 14

- a. **emigrate – immigrate**
My friend wants to **emigrate** from India.
He wants to **immigrate** to Australia.
- b. **beside – besides**
I was sitting **beside** my friend.
Besides a car, he has a van.
- c. **judicial – judicious**
The minister is facing a **judicial** enquiry.
Education should be a **judicious** mixture of skill and knowledge.
- d. **eligible – illegible**
He is **eligible** to enter the university.
His handwriting is **illegible** so we cannot read the letter.
- e. **conscience – conscious**
As he did not receive any bribery his **conscience** is clear.
He is **conscious** of the mistake he committed.
- f. **industrial – industrious**
Japan is an **industrial** country.
Ant is known to be the most **industrious** of all insects.
- g. **eminent – imminent**
Her humbleness stands out in the most **eminent** way among her peers.
After his mischievous behavior, his punishment was **imminent**.
- h. **illicit – elicit**
He was caught by the police because he sold **illicit** liquor.
The teacher **elicited** the answer from the student.
- i. **prescribed – proscribed**
Doctor **prescribed** medicine for the child.
His expenditure was **proscribed** by the management.
- j. **affect – effect**
The severe cold **affects** the child.
The child is cured because of the **effect** of the medicine.
- k. **aural – oral**
The patient received something to assist her **aural** functioning.
Oral medicine is prescribed for the child.
- l. **born – borne**
She has **borne** the adversity with dignity.
She was **born** in Ireland.

Complete the following with appropriate words from the box given.

Page 148,149

night/knight	scent/sent/cent	stationary/stationery	lead/lead	reign/rain/rein
band/banned	bows/boughs	sell/cell	pass/pause/paws	present/present

1. My mother brought an expensive watch as a birthday present.
2. Everybody accepted the fact that overeating could easily lead to obesity.
3. In the middle ages, people were trained to become a knight at a young age.
4. Akshitha's brother plays the bugle in his school band.
5. The weather is fine and the air is filled with the scent of lemons.
6. What a splendid reign the emperor Alexander's might have been!
7. Humans have foot, animals have paws.
8. They know how to sell their mobile phones online.
9. The teacher is so happy that all the students are present today.
10. The cars were stationary in the traffic jam.
11. It is not easy for him to tie bows in his shoe laces.

Exercise with Answer

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate word given with in brackets.

1. The lady is _____ the torn shirt while her husband is _____ seeds in their land.
(sowing, sewing)
2. He saw a _____ truck when he went to buy some _____. (stationary, stationery)
3. A _____ met the _____ who had just come from mine. (miner, minor)
4. The boy came to get _____ from his father to _____ the hill close by. (ascent, assent)
5. The man tried to get _____ in the case in which he had stolen a _____ of cotton.
(bale, bail)
6. The _____ lady walked close to the _____ which had fallen from a windmill.
(vane, vain)
7. She kept the basket of _____ on her _____. (waste, waist)
8. The _____ to Chennai was blocked with the _____ of the uprooted tree. (root, route)
9. In the _____ the old lady went to the second _____ to meet the stranger. (storey, story)
10. Students _____ the composition in the _____ place. (right, write)
11. When the _____ entered the ground insects came in _____ and attacked them.
(teem, team)
12. When the lady was in the _____ she took a step forward to _____ at a man who giggled at her. (stare, stair)
13. He goes to the market with a _____ throat to find out that the prices of the commodities _____ up every day. (soar, sore)
14. Keeping the _____ of the horse he travelled in the _____ (rein, rain)
15. The teacher was _____ happy because the class was _____ (quite, quite)

Answers			
1. sewing, sowing	5. bail, bale	9. story, storey	13. sore, soar
2. stationary, stationery	6. vain, vane	10. write, right	14. rein, rain
3. minor, miner	7. waste, waist	11. team, teem	15. quite, quiet
4. assent, ascent	8. route, root	12. stair, stare	

Self - Evaluation

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate word given with in brackets.

- We have to make slight _____ in our _____ to accommodate some more people. (alter, altar)
- I _____ down to meet the leader who stands under the _____. (bough, bow)
- He _____ that a _____ of animals had destroyed the banana trees. (herd, heard)
- She was the _____ who was _____ to apply for the post. (made, maid)
- When she was ready to _____ some vegetables she heard the _____ of the church bell. (peel, peal)
- She did not touch the _____ because of the _____ smell. (foul, fowl)
- He got the news of the _____ of the child when he was in the _____. (birth, berth)
- The _____ of the _____ he received is not known to him. (prize, price)
- The _____ idea in the document is that people should follow high _____. (principle, principal)
- I have to _____ out my friend because he stole a _____ of cotton. (dail, dale)
- They _____ for the helpers to carry their luggage because of its _____. (wait, weight)
- A _____ was for _____ in the market near the sea shore. (sail, sale)
- Dates are eaten as _____ in _____. (desert, dessert)
- Because of his _____ he could not enter the _____. (gate, gait)
- Joe was the _____ man to receive a _____ from the bank. (loan, lone)
- _____ to climatic change the tip of the grass was shining with _____. (dew, due)
- My friends took lot of _____ so they _____ from stomach ache. (ale, ail)
- The crowd shouted _____ because they were not _____ inside the hall. (allowed, aloud)
- The man with the _____ head _____ because he was unnecessarily charged with a theft. (bawled, bald)
- The tourists enjoyed seeing the _____ tree on the _____. (beach, beech)
- The children _____ the _____ balloons. (blew, blue)
- In this shop they _____ all kinds of _____. (cell, sell)
- He applied the _____ of his car to stop his vehicle near the school because he wanted to meet his friend in the _____ (brake, break)
- The old lady was about to _____ so she refused to _____ her hair. (dye, die)

PART - IV

8. MODAL VERBS

Mark : 1

- ◇ A modal is a type of auxiliary (helping) verb that is used to express: ability, possibility, permission or obligation.
- ◇ There are 9 modal auxiliary verbs. They are : can, could, shall, should, will, would, may, might & must. These modal verbs are used to indicate different functions.

Modal auxiliary	Meanings / Functions
can	ability, permission, request, possibility.
could	ability, formal request, possibility.
shall	future (I person) willingness, intention, suggestion, insistence.
should	obligation, necessity, expectation, advice.
will	future (II, III person) willingness, intention, prediction, insistence.
would	willingness, habitual action in the past, probability, wishes, desire.
may	permission, possibility, wishes, purpose, concession.
might	permission, possibility, concession, reproach.
must	necessity, prohibition, compulsion, obligation, deduction, certainty, probability

Textual Exercises

Page 14

Fill in the blanks with modal auxiliaries.

- a. The candidates must answer five out of ten questions.
- b. How can you open my bag?
- c. Tajudeen will finish this work by Monday.
- d. Can /shall go to school today?
- e. I wish you would tell me the truth
- f. Poonam could not catch the bus yesterday.
- g. People who live in glass houses must not throw stones.
- h. You need not go to the market as I have brought vegetables.
- i. Must you have taken all this trouble?
- j. You must be joking.
- k. I tried to climb up the tree, but could not.
- l. Hima Das ran so fast that she would win the medal.
- m. You can lead a horse to water, but you cannot make it drink.
- n. I would like to have a cup of coffee.
- o. My grandfather would visit this temple when he was young.

Complete the following sentences with modals using the clues given.

- a. You must help the needy. (moral obligation)
- b. If I were you, I would not behave like that. (conditional Sentence)
- c. I will never tell a lie. (determination)
- d. My uncle might have reached by now. (possibility)

- e. The patient is critical. He **must** be taken to the hospital. (compulsion)
- f. I **would** to play hockey when I was a student. (past habit)
- g. You **should** not attend my class. (order)
- h. He **might** come today. (remote possibility)
- i. You **must** follow the traffic rules. (regulation)
- j. He **will** play the match. (willingness)
- k. You **should** not waste time on it. (necessity)
- l. Had the doctor come in time, he **might** have saved the patient. (probability)

Exercise with Answer

Fill in the blanks using suitable modal verbs.

- | | |
|---|-------------------|
| 1. I hope he _____ succeed. | Ans : will |
| 2. _____ I use your telephone? | Ans : may/could |
| 3. How _____ you speak so rudely to me? | Ans : can/could |
| 4. I _____ definitely help you | Ans : will |
| 5. You _____ not trouble him. | Ans : should |
| 6. If it rains, the match _____ be cancelled. | Ans : will |
| 7. Priya said that she _____ do it. | Ans : would/could |
| 8. If you practise regularly you _____ improve your bowling. | Ans : will/can |
| 9. We _____ help you, if you remain honest. | Ans : will |
| 10. Youngsters _____ give respect to elders. | Ans : must |
| 11. We _____ obey the rules of the road. | Ans : must |
| 12. Men _____ come and go but I go on forever. | Ans : may |
| 13. Students _____ not bring calculators to the examination hall. | Ans : should |
| 14. You _____ go home if you have finished your work. | Ans : can/may |
| 15. _____ you speak Hindi ? | Ans : can |

Self - Evaluation

Fill in the blanks using suitable modal verbs.

1. _____ you please tell me the direction to the hotel?
2. You _____ pay in cash. They do not accept credit cards.
3. I _____ come home from the office today.
4. You _____ clean your room.
5. We _____ keep the lights and fans switched off when they are not in use.
6. We _____ improve the existing education system.
7. _____ you have a wonderful day!
8. I _____ go to see the movie. The reviews are good.
9. I _____ definitely be at the airport to receive you.
10. She _____ take her meal regularly.
11. You _____ reach home before eleven, she said.

12. _____ we go for a walk?
13. The soldiers in the army _____ wear uniform.
14. There is one more point I _____ refer to.
15. You have worked hard. You _____ pass.
16. It is very cloudy. It _____ rain.
17. You _____ be properly dressed when you come to office.
18. _____ you like to come to the party tomorrow?
19. People _____ not tell lies.
20. It's snowing outside. So we _____ stay at home.
21. You've got plenty of time. You _____ hurry.
22. There's a knock at the door. I'm expecting Paul . It _____ be him.
23. I can't get my phone to work. It _____ be out of order
24. _____ I ask you a question?
25. She _____ be 35.

PART - IV**9. SEMI-MODAL OR QUASI MODAL****Mark : 1**

- ◇ Semi-modal auxiliary verbs, often simply called semi-modal verbs, are verbs that sometimes behave like modal auxiliary verbs. (They are also sometimes known as marginal modal verbs.)
- ◇ Like the “proper” modal verbs, they are used with the base form of verbs (the infinitive without to) to create a unique meaning.
- ◇ ‘ought to’, ‘used to’ ‘dare’, and ‘need’ are called semi or quasi modal or auxiliary

Used to

- ◇ When we speak about a past habit, condition, or fact that is no longer the case, we can use the semi-modal ‘used to’ with the base form of the verb. For example:
 - I used to get up early when I lived in New York.
 - She used to live in Ireland.
 - We used to be in a band together.
 - This watch used to belong to my father.

As a main verb

- ◇ A large source of confusion arises around the difference between the semi-modal verb ‘used to’ and two similarly structured main verbs — be used to and get used to.

Be used to

- ◇ When we use ‘be used to’ with a noun, noun phrase, or the gerund of a verb, it means “to be accustomed to something.” For example:
 - “I am used to getting up at 7 AM every morning.”
 - “She was used to the stress by that point.”
- ◇ To form the negative of be used to, we add not after the auxiliary verb be, which can be contracted

to isn't, aren't, wasn't, or weren't. To form interrogative sentences, we invert be with the subject. For example:

- "I am not used to living in the city."
- "He wasn't used to so much work."
- "Are you used to living with roommates?"

Ought to

- ◇ Ought to is considered a semi-modal because, like 'used to', it ends in 'to' and so makes verbs infinitive.
- ◇ It is commonly compared to 'should' because it expresses that something is viewed as correct, preferable, or necessary—or as probable, likely, or expected. It can also be used to ask for or offer advice about something. For example:
 - "With the cost of airfares so high, in-flight meals ought to be free." (It is correct or preferable that the meals be free.)
 - "We ought to arrive in the evening." (It is probable or expected that we'll arrive in the evening.)
 - "I think we ought to turn back." (Turning back is the necessary or best course of action—worded as advice.)
 - "You ought to see the Grand Canyon some day." (It is my advice or recommendation for you to visit the Grand Canyon.)
- ◇ When 'ought to' is made negative, not comes between 'ought' (sometimes contracted as oughtn't) and 'to'; it is common to omit 'to' when ought to is used with not. For example:
 - "You ought not to read in such dim light."
 - "We oughtn't leave the house; it isn't safe."
- ◇ We can also form questions by inverting ought with the subject; this is not very common, though. Again, 'to' is sometimes omitted in this form. For example:
 - "Ought we find someplace to eat?"
 - "Oughtn't she study for her exam?"
 - "Ought they to be more worried about the storm?"
 - "Ought not he to finish his homework first?"
- ◇ 'Ought to' is becoming far less common than 'should in' modern English, especially in American English.

Dare

- ◇ When dare is used as a semi-modal verb, it means "to be brave, reckless, or rude enough to do or try something." Remember, when functioning modally, it does not conjugate for person or tense. For example:
 - "If he **dare** cross me again, I'll make sure he pays dearly for it."
- ◇ As a semi-modal verb, dare more often takes not to form a negative statement (very rarely contracted as daren't), or is inverted with the subject to form an interrogative sentence. For example:
 - "I **dare not** press the issue any further."
 - "How **dare** she talk to me like that?"
 - "**Dare** he meddle with the laws of nature?"
 - "They **daren't** give him a reason to be angry."

- ◇ However, with the exception of the now idiomatic phrase “How dare (someone),” the use of dare as a modal verb has become rare in modern English.

As a main verb

- ◇ Dare can also be used as an intransitive main verb with the same meaning as the modal version.
- ◇ When it functions as a main verb, however, it is able to conjugate for person and tense, and it can be followed by a verb in either its base or infinitive form. For example:
 - “I can’t believe he **dared (to)** stand up to the boss.”
 - “No one **dares (to)** question my authority!”
- ◇ When dare is used as a main verb, it must take the **auxiliary verb** ‘do’ to form questions or be made negative.
- ◇ As we saw in the section on primary auxiliary verbs, it is ‘do’, rather than the main verb, that conjugates for tense, person, and number in this case. For example:
 - “**Did** they **dare (to)** go through with it?”
 - “He **doesn’t dare (to)** argue with the principal.”
- ◇ Dare can also mean “to challenge someone to (do) something that requires courage, boldness, or recklessness,” in which case it must take a noun, pronoun, or infinitive as a direct object.
- ◇ It cannot be used modally with this meaning. For example:
 - I **dare you** to ask her on this issue.
 - I’ve never been **dared** to race someone before.

Need

- ◇ Need as a semi-modal verb is almost always used in negative sentences to express a lack of obligation or necessity, either taking the adverb not (usually contracted as needn’t) or paired with a negative word or phrase, such as never, no one, nothing, etc. For example:
 - No one **need** know about this.
 - He **needn’t** have called; I told him I would be late.
 - You **needn’t** worry about my grades.
 - Nothing **need** change simply because my father is no longer here.
 - It can also be used to form interrogative sentences by inverting with the subject, as in:
 - **Need** we be concerned?
 - **Need** I go to the market later?
- ◇ Like dare, though, the modal use of need has become quite uncommon in modern English, except in very formal speech or writing.

As a main verb

- ◇ Need is much more common as a main verb.
- ◇ This means it conjugates for person (becoming needs in the third-person singular) or tense (becoming needed), and it uses auxiliary ‘**did**’ to form negatives and questions.
- ◇ As a main verb, need can be followed by nouns, noun phrases, pronouns, gerunds, or infinitives. For example:

- He **needs** that report by tomorrow.
- **Does** she **need** to know where the house is?
- You have plenty of time, so you **don't need** to rush.
- He **needed** a place to stay, so I offered him one.

Exercise with Answer

Fill the blanks with correct semi-modals or quasi modals.

- | | |
|--|---------------|
| 1. You _____ work hard to pass the exam. | Ans: ought to |
| 2. How _____ you open my letter without my permission? | Ans: dare |
| 3. Our uncle has reached home already. You _____ wait here. | Ans: need not |
| 4. Sam _____ play the piano when he was young. | Ans: used to |
| 5. He _____ pay the bill today. They have postponed the last date for payment. | Ans: need not |
| 6. We _____ start the project now to finish it in time. | Ans: ought to |
| 7. In the past I _____ see many movies. | Ans: used to |
| 8. How _____ he enter the garden? | Ans: dare |
| 9. He _____ run fast to catch the bus. | Ans: ought to |
| 10. We _____ walk in the park in the evenings. | Ans: used to |

Self - Evaluation

Fill the blanks with correct semi-modals or quasi modals.

- As we have still sun light you _____ come with me.
- Nobody is at home so you _____ help me with the house work
- There was a time when I _____ stay up very late.
- How _____ you spill ink on my shirt?
- You _____ lose any more weight. You are already slim.
- We _____ make the first move to win in the competition.
- We _____ stay at home as it was snowing all the time.
- You _____ get a shawl from Kashmir.
- Tell him he _____ go to school today as it is a holiday.
- My friend _____ borrow my car when we were in the college.
- He _____ begin his studies now itself.
- How _____ you tell a lie to me about my result?
- Our country _____ become a super power to face the challenges.
- She _____ sell her house because she got money from her uncle.
- How _____ you call me an idiot?

PART - IV

10. TENSES

Marks : 2

- ◇ We have three times- past, present, and future. Each time has four tenses in English Language.
 - **Past** : Simple past, past continuous, past perfect, past perfect continuous
 - **Present** : simple present, present continuous, present perfect and present perfect continuous
 - **Future** : simple future, future continuous, future perfect and future perfect continuous
- ◇ Each time has four tenses so totally we have 12 tenses. Out of all these 12 tenses, only two tenses have 'direct' verbs. They are simple present and simple past.
- ◇ All other tenses are formed with the help of auxiliary verbs.

Past

- He **wrote** a letter. - simple past singular and plural
- He **was writing** a letter. - past continuous singular
- They **were writing** letters. - past continuous plural
- He **had written** a letter. - past perfect singular and plural
- He **had been writing** a letter. - past perfect continuous, singular and plural

Present

- He **writes** a letter. - simple present singular
- They **write** letters. - simple present plural
- He **is writing** a letter. - present continuous singular
- They **are writing** letters. - present continuous plural
- He **has written** a letter. - present perfect singular
- They **have written** letters. - present perfect plural
- He **has been writing** a letter. - present perfect continuous singular
- They **have been writing** letters. - present perfect continuous plural

Future

- He **will write** a letter. - simple future singular and plural
- He **will be writing** a letter. - future continuous singular and plural
- He **will have written** a letter. - future perfect singular and plural
- He **will have been writing** a letter. - future perfect continuous singular and plural

Tenses	Functions	Examples
Simple Present Tense	For habitual action	I get up early in the morning.
	For instantaneous present (commentaries, demonstration)	The ball goes up and the fielder catches the ball.
	Future expressed with certainty	He comes here tomorrow.
	To indicate possession	I have a Honda bike.
	In proverbs	Slow and steady wins the race
	Universal truth	The sun rises in the east.
	Scientific facts	Water boils at 100 deg.
	Conditional clause	If you study well you will pass.

Present continuous	To refer to an action in progress at the time of speaking.	My father is reading newspaper now.
	An action which is planned to take place in near future	Our PM is visiting Tamil Nadu next week.
Present perfect	To refer to an action which is just completed.	He has just returned from school.
	To refer to a past action recollected at present.	I have seen all his films.
	To refer to a past action whose effect is even at present.	It has rained all through night
	To denote an action beginning in the past and continuing up to the present.	I have lived here for 10 years.
Present perfect continuous	To refer to an action that began in the past continues till now.	She has been working in the bank for five years.
Simple past	To indicate completed action in the past.	She met me in April.
	To indicate past habits.	He studied many hours every day.
	In conditional clause.	If I saw her I would give the parcel.
	In indirect speech.	He told me that he was a good boy.
Past continuous	To refer to an action in progress in the past	I was searching for a job when I was in Chennai.
Past perfect	To refer to the earlier of the two actions in the past.	The train had left before he reached the station.
	In conditional clause.	If he had studied well he would have passed.
Past perfect continuous	To indicate an action that began at certain point of time in the past and continued up to that time.	They had been building a bridge for five years.
Simple future	To indicate an action which is yet to happen.	She will meet me within two days.
Future continuous	To indicate an action going on at some time in future.	He will be studying for exam next month.
Future perfect	To indicate the completion of an action by a certain future time.	She will have paid the fees by the end of this month.
Future perfect continuous	To indicate an action that will continue up until a point in the future.	They will have been playing football in the field before you reach.

- ◇ Certain verbs do not take continuous forms. They take only simple forms.
- I am hearing a strange noise. – wrong
 - I hear a strange noise. – right
- ◇ The common words are given below. They fall under four categories – feeling, senses, communication and thinking.
- **feeling** : hate, like, love, prefer, want, wish.
 - **senses** : appear, feel, hear, see, seem, smell, sound, taste.
 - **communication** : agree, deny, disagree, mean, promise, satisfy, surprise.
 - **thinking** : believe, imagine, know, mean, realize, recognize, remember, understand.

Textual Exercises

Complete the sentences with the correct tense form of the verbs in brackets.

- Tell** (tell) exactly what **happened** (happen) last night.
- Mrs. Mageshwari is my Maths teacher. She **has been teaching** (teach) me for four years.
- I **had never thought** (never/think) of a career in medicine before I spoke to my Biology teacher but now I seriously **consider** (seriously/consider) it.
- Oh no! I **have forgotten** (forget) to bring my assignment! What am I going to do? This is the second time I **have done** (do) this!
- I can't remember what my teacher **said** (say) yesterday about our homework. I **did not listen** (not listen) properly because Hussain **was talking** (talk) to me at the same time.
- Last year we **went** (go) on a school trip to Kanyakumari. We **had** (have) a very interesting time.
- At the moment I **am thinking** (think) about what course to pursue next year but I **haven't made** (not make) a final decision yet.
- I **get** (get) up at 7 every morning but this morning I **had been sleeping** (sleep) for a long time and I **did not get** (not get) up until 8.

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the verbs given in the brackets.

- Everyone **was sleeping** when the earthquake hit the small town. (sleep)
- Evangeline **quit** her job a couple of years ago. (quit)
- Where **did you spend** your last holidays? (you spend)
- I think Suresh **will leave** for Tiruvallur next morning. (leave)
- I was angry that I **made** such a mistake. (make)
- My mother was tired yesterday because she **had not slept** well the night before. (not sleep)
- Her parents **will be** in Coimbatore for two weeks from today. (be)
- Nothing much **had happened** when I got to the meeting. (happen)
- Scientists predict that by 2050, man **will have landed** on Mars. (land)
- Sh! Someone **is listening** to our conversation. (listen)
- The plane **will take** off in a few minutes. (take)
- They **were talking** about me when I interrupted their conversation. (talk)
- Justin and his parents **are living** in an apartment right now because they can't find a cheap house. (live)
- Rajini Prem's **is** in Chengalpet now. (be)
- Yusuf **goes** to the movies once in a while. (go)
- This **has been** an easy quiz so far. (be)
- Our team **did not win** any games last year. (not win)
- We **saw** a wonderful film in the cinema last night. (see)
- Hurry up! The movie **has already begun**. (already, begin)

Exercise with Answer

Fill the blanks with proper tense of the word given in bracket.

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------|
| 1. The earth _____ (move) round the sun. | Ans: moves |
| 2. My friend _____ (see) the film yesterday. | Ans: saw |
| 3. It started to rain while we _____ (play) tennis. | Ans: were playing |
| 4. I _____ (study) English for five years. | Ans: have been studying |
| 5. My uncle _____ (come) just now. | Ans: has come |
| 6. Surely the train _____ (arrive) before we reach the station. | Ans: will arrive |
| 7. Don't disturb me. I _____ (do) my homework now. | Ans: am doing |
| 8. Fortune _____ (favour) the brave. | Ans: favours |
| 9. Before she left the house she _____ (lock) the door. | Ans: had locked |
| 10. He _____ (complete) the work by the end of this week. | Ans: will have completed |

Self - Evaluation

Fill the blanks with proper tense of the word given in bracket.

- The children _____ (burst) into peal of laughter.
- I _____ (hear) the train coming.
- He _____ (watch) T.V. all evenings.
- He _____ (go) out five minutes ago.
- I _____ (see) John at zoo yesterday.
- Look, the sun _____ (rise) over the hills.
- Our guests _____ (arrive) soon.
- We _____ (live) in this house since 2000.
- We _____ (know) our exam results in coming May.
- The plane _____ (arrive) at 3 a.m.
- By 2025, computers _____ (take) over many of the jobs that people do today.
- He _____ (write) a novel now. Next month it will be published.
- When I _____ (have) my dinner I went to bed.
- When I was in Delhi I _____ (visit) Rishikesh.
- We _____ (finish) our breakfast just now.
- I would be very happy if I _____ (win) the match.
- Ravi _____ (meet) me day after tomorrow.
- The teacher _____ (ask) me why I was late.
- I _____ (write) my exercise by then.
- Tomorrow owing to bandh, all shops _____ (open) only at 6 pm in the evening.
- I _____ (play) tennis last evening at the club.
- It _____ (rain) since early morning.
- The cabinet _____ (decide) on the bill next week.
- Next week by now I _____ (enjoy) my holiday.
- She _____ (complete) the project next month.

PART - IV**11. DEVELOPING THE HINTS****Marks : 5****Exercise with Answer****Develop the following hints into a readable story and give a suitable title.****Model**

A rich farmer - lot of land - cattle and servants - two sons - happy life - After some years younger son unhappy - asked for his share of the property - wouldn't listen to father's advice - got his share - sold them all - went away to another country - fell into bad ways - soon all money gone - poor - no one to help him - understood his mistake.

Title : The Disobedient Son

Once there was a rich farmer in a Village. He had a lot of land, cattle and many servants. He had two sons. He led a happy life with them. After some years the younger son became unhappy. He asked his father for his share of the property. His father advised him not to demand like that. But he would not listen to his father's advice. He got his share and sold them. He had a huge amount with him. With this amount he travelled to a distant country. He had bad company there and fell into evil ways. All the money was gone. He became poor and no one helped him. Then he understood his mistake and returned to his country. His father and brother took him into their fold and supported him forever. We should obey our parents.

Self - Evaluation**Develop the following hints into a readable story and give a suitable title.**

1. Devan - clever thief - robs the rich - gives all to the sick and the needy - other thieves jealous - plan to get rid of him - challenge Devan to steal the King's pyjamas - Devan accepts challenge - finds king sleeping - opens a bottle of red ants on the bed - King badly bitten - cries for help - servants rush in pretends to look for ants - Devan removes King's pyjamas - escapes - other thieves dumbfounded - accept Devan their leader
2. Manager of a firm advertised - night watchman - applicants presented - manager not satisfied - found something wrong with each man - there was Raju - an applicant - sat in a corner - patiently waiting - his turn came - manager found nothing wrong in his appearance - questioned about his health - got the reply - I suffering from sleeplessness - manager happy - appointed him
3. Dick - actor - brilliant - strange character - insists on realism - headache to the manager - a new drama - first drinking scene - water provided in a cup as usual - Dick insists on liquor - manager has to buy a bottle of liquor - second scene - fight - insists on real swords - refuses to handle wooden swords - steel swords brought - third scene - hero drinks poison - manager has real poison - actor in a fix - promises to be sensible in future
4. Tenali Raman - offends King - King gets angry sentences Raman to death - but allows Raman to choose type of death - wise Raman - promptly says - want natural death - of old age - King amazed - pardons Raman.

5. Farmer in a village – had a hen – Golden egg – sold golden eggs – became rich – greedy – thought to get all eggs at a time – killed the hen – found no eggs.
6. Birbal – courtiers jealous of him – ask Akbar to let them test his wisdom – one courtier puts a question to him – How many crows in Agra – Birbal asks for a week – everyday seen on the terrace looking at the crows – after a week courtier asks him again – Birbal says as many crow as hairs in the courtier's head – Akbar laughs.

PART - IV**12. PROSE COMPREHENSION****Marks : 5****Textual Exercises**

1. Read the passage given below and answer the questions that follow.

Humans have long been fascinated by fiction. We experience excitement in assigning supernatural power to imaginary characters in fictional stories – and so we have Spider man, Batman, He-man, Titans and many more. The 'Cyborg' was an offshoot of such wild imagination of humans to invest our species with superhuman powers. Today, the Cyborg is no more an imaginary organism. We are living in a world where a sizeable population of humans have merged their bodies with technological implants. The term 'Cyborg', short for 'cybernetic organism', was coined to describe a man, whose body is implanted with technological devices to supplement and substitute body functions.

Cyborgs include people with cardiac pacemakers, contact lenses, bionic ears and eyes, prosthetics and so on. In other words, a cyborg is partly human and partly machine. The technological innovations in the field of medicine and healthcare augment humans with machines, producing a beta version of the human body. The advent of brain machine interfaces is certain to blur the boundary between humans and machines. Scientists are working hard to find a technique for age reversal too. People do not want to die, so mankind is striving to get to the final frontier, which is development of machines and devices that would accord man immortality.

The needs of humans are not limited. As time passes, food habits change, thinking patterns change, and even appearances change. We are about to travel by driverless, fully automated vehicles. Computers and smart phones have become our masters. The more we depend and merge with technological advancements, the more the humanness in us slowly erodes. Intelligence is sought to be infused into machines and robotics are designed in such a way to give man a virtual human companion. The field of artificial intelligence is overtaking the human brain and many fear that it could even harm the human race. Despite certain limitations and potential threats, many believe that cyborgs will be the next step in the evolution of mankind. The amalgamation of man and machine is sure to add a new dimension to the life of mankind and this will prove to be the 'biggest evolution in Biology' since the emergence of life, four billion years ago.

Questions:

- a) Account for the popularity of characters with supernatural powers.

We experience excitement when we read about the supernatural powers. Many characters are assigned with supernatural powers.

b) **Who is referred to as a 'Cyborg'?**

The term 'Cyborg' refers to a person whose body is implanted with technological devices to supplement and substitute body function.

c) **What is expected to happen with the advent of the brain machine interface?**

The advent of the brain machine interface will reduce the boundary between humans and machines.

d) **The needs of humans are not limited. How is this statement elaborated in the passage?**

As time passes, food habits change, thinking patterns change, and even appearances change.

e) **How can a machine turn into a virtual companion for humans?**

When intelligence is infused into machines it will man a virtual human companion.

2. **Read the following passage carefully and answer the following questions.**

Page 152

Pollution is the introduction of contaminants into the environment that cause harm to the ecosystem. The different kinds of pollution are air pollution, water pollution and land pollution. The release of various gases, finely divided solid particles, or liquid droplets that escape into the atmosphere to disperse and dilute in the environment is called air pollution. Modern society is also concerned about specific types of pollutants, such as noise pollution, light pollution, and plastic pollution.

Particulate matter (PM), also known as particle pollution, is a complex mixture of extremely small particles and liquid droplets that get into the air. These particles if inhaled can affect health. The impact of PM 2.5 is particularly high in South Asia. Outdoor pollution is caused by a variety of pollutants like public and private vehicles, waste burning in the open, power production industries and construction and even cigarette smoking in public places.

Presently, air pollution is a major and growing risk factor for ill health in India. Delhi is one of the most air polluted cities in India. The air in the city as well as areas surrounding it has worsened to extremely hazardous levels in the recent years. This year's pollution level is the worst in four years. Several studies have shown that poor air quality is a cause for many health issues among people with lower respiratory disorders with symptoms like dry cough, breathlessness, wheezing, chest discomfort, serious lung infections and cardio vascular diseases. Some studies throw light on the fact that about 16 per cent of the deaths worldwide in 2015 were due to pollution.

Air Masks are an option to protect oneself outdoor. Air masks can be used while commuting or while one is exposed to a polluted area. Some of these masks also include a layer of Activated carbon to filter the air. They protect us from suspended air particles and particulate matter up to the size of 2.5 microns and above. Their usage is limited to some days and should be disposed of after their prescribed duration of usage. The price for air masks starts from Rs 100 and can go up to Rs 500 and more.

We have to take active measures to control pollution and protect ourselves to lead a healthy and pollution free life.

Questions:1. **What is meant by pollution? Mention the different kinds of pollution.**

Pollution is the introduction of contaminants into the environment. The different kinds of pollution are air pollution, water pollution and land pollution.

2. How does Particulate matter cause air pollution?

Particulate matter is a complex mixture of extremely small particles and liquid droplets that get into air. If inhaled the particles can affect health.

3. Identify three major causes of pollution in air.

Burning waste in the open, power production industries, public and private vehicles are the three major causes of pollution in air.

4. Name the types of pollution we encounter now.

Air pollution, water pollution and land pollution are the types of pollution we encounter now.

5. What sort of health issues do people face due to air pollution?

Due to air pollution people face lower respiratory disorders with symptoms like dry cough, breathlessness, wheezing, chest discomfort, serious lung infections and cardio vascular diseases.

Self - Evaluation

Read the following passages and answer the questions given below.

Passage I

One day Gandhiji and Vallabhbhai Patel were talking when Gandhiji remarked, 'At times even a dead snake can be useful.' And he narrated the following story to illustrate his point. Once, a snake trespassed into the house of an old woman. She was frightened and cried out for help. Hearing her loud cries, the neighbours rushed in and killed the snake. Then they went back to their homes. Instead of throwing the dead snake far away, the old woman flung it on to her roof.

Sometime later, a kite was flying overhead when it spotted the dead snake. The kite was holding a pearl necklace in its beak. When it saw the dead snake, it dropped the necklace on the roof and flew away with the dead snake. When the old woman saw a bright, shining object on her roof, she pulled it down with the help of a pole. When she found that it was a pearl necklace, she danced with immense joy.

One day a trader found a snake in his house. He couldn't find anyone to kill it for him and hadn't the courage to kill it himself. Besides, he hated killing any living creatures. So he covered the snake with a pot and left it there.

As luck would have it, that night some thieves broke into the trader's house. They entered the kitchen and saw the overturned pot. 'Ah', they thought, 'the trader has hidden something valuable here.' As they lifted the pot, the snake hissed and the thieves ran for their life.

Questions:

1. Why did the woman cry out for help?
2. What did the kite do when it saw the dead snake on the roof?
3. How did the live snake help the trader?
4. Why was the old woman happy?
5. Find the word from the passage which means
 - a) to make the meaning of something clear
 - b) a long thin straight piece of wood / metal

Passage II

Papaya is a healthy fruit with a list of properties that is long and exhaustive. You can munch on it as a salad, have it cooked or boiled or just drink it up as milkshake or juices. Papaya has many virtues that can contribute to our good health. The most important of these virtues is the protein-digesting enzyme it has. The enzyme is similar to pepsin in its digestive action and is said to be so powerful that it can digest 200 times its own weight in protein. It assists the body in assimilating the maximum nutritional value from food to provide energy and body building materials. Papain in raw papaya makes up for the deficiency of gastric juice and fights excess of unhealthy mucus in the stomach and intestinal irritation. The ripe fruit, if eaten regularly corrects habitual constipation, bleeding piles and chronic diarrhea. The juice of the papaya seeds also assists in the above-mentioned ailments. Papaya juice, used as a cosmetic, removes freckles or brown spots due to exposure to sunlight and makes the skin smooth and delicate. A paste of papaya seeds is applied in skin diseases like those caused by ringworm. The black seeds of the papaya are highly beneficial in the treatment of cirrhosis of the liver caused by alcoholism, malnutrition, etc. A tablespoonful of its juice, combined with a hint of fresh lime juice, should be consumed once or twice daily for a month. The fresh juice of raw papaya mixed with honey can be applied over inflamed tonsils, for diphtheria and other throat disorders. It dissolves the membrane and prevents infection from spreading.

Questions :

1. How can we use papaya?
2. What are the virtues of Papaya?
3. Papaya juice is used as a cosmetic because _____.
4. Skin disease like _____ is cured by using paste of papaya seeds.
5. Apart from papaya fruit what part of it can be used as medicine?

Passage III

Climate change will have serious implications as numerous adverse impacts are expected in terms of access to clean water, food and ecosystem resources. By 2020, it is feared that in some African countries yields from rain-fed agriculture could be reduced by up to 50%. Climate change is also likely to lead to some irreversible impacts on biodiversity. However, it is within the reach of human society to meet these threats. We have to adapt to climate change. It requires investment in storm protection and water supply infrastructures as well as community health services. Bringing changes in lifestyle is an important part of mitigation measures. Greater cooperative efforts are required by both developed and developing nations to stop emission of greenhouse gases. The youth of today have a huge responsibility towards creating a bright future and they obviously have a stake in it. They must pursue knowledge by which economic progress can take place without changing the environment.

Questions :

1. What are the impacts of climatic change?
2. What problem will be met by Africa in 2020?
3. How will we adapt to climate changes?
4. Greater efforts are needed to come out of _____.
5. What is the role of youth to make up the climatic change?

Passage IV

The worst days of any summer are the rainy ones. We spend all year looking forward to nice weather and long, hot days. All of winter, with its dreary gray days and bitter cold, we dream of those endless days at the beach, laying on the sand and soaking in the bright and burning sun. And then, summer comes, and it rains. As a child, I would wake up to rainy summer days and come close to crying. It wasn't fair. We suffered through months of school and miserable weather for those scant ten weeks of freedom and balmy weather. Any day that I could not spend at the beach or playing ball with my friends seemed like a punishment for something I didn't even do. On those rainy summer days, I had nothing fun to do and could only sit inside, staring out at the rain like a Dickensian orphan. I was an only child, so there was no one else to play with. My father worked from home, so I was not truly alone, but he could not actively play with me since he was technically at work. It was those days that I would resign myself to whatever was on television or any books that I could find lying around. I'd crawl through the day and pray each night that the rain would not be there the next day.

Questions :

1. What do we dream of in winter?
2. Why did the author cry during summer?
3. What could not be done by the author due to rainy days?
4. What did he do during the rainy day?
5. Every day he would _____ to avoid rain.

Passage V

Often students who are fond of reading are labeled by their comrades as bookworms. Those words typically come from the mouths of students who consider themselves as being gamesters. Boys who shine in athletics or in the playing of some game – particularly cricket – consider that the sporting field is a better or nobler arena for the expenditure of their activities than the classroom or the reading desk. This idea is born out of an inferiority complex inherent in the athletic students who actually envy their peers who shine academically. Academic honours, after all, have a glamour which is unique. I am not saying that excellence in the sporting area is worthless. In fact, being able to play a game well is indeed an achievement. Even if you fail, sports and games instill team spirit in the participants. It should also be remembered that athletes and players do a lot to bring honour to their country. Actually team spirit and the willingness to cooperate can only be cultivated in a person by engaging in group activities. However, studies should not be sacrificed for the sake of playing sports and games. It is often observed that boys who become obsessed with the playing of games ignore their studies and as a result their academic ability suffers.

Questions :

1. What is the nick name given to the students who read books?
2. Who consider play ground is better than classroom?
3. The inferiority complex is felt by _____.
4. The participants of sports and game have _____.
5. Whose academic ability suffers and why?

Passage VI

The Amazon is the world's largest tropical rainforest. It is roughly the size of the continent of Australia and covers an area of nearly 2.8 million square miles. The Amazon rainforest

gets its life from the majestic Amazon River which runs through the heart of the region. Amazon is also the second largest river in the world. The rainforest is simply the drainage basin for the river and its tributaries. The vast forest consists of four layers, each featuring its own ecosystems and specially adapted plants and animals. The forest floor is the lowest region. Since only two percent of the sunlight can filter through the top layers to the understory very few plants grow there. The forest floor, however, is rich with rotting vegetation and bodies of dead animals which quickly break down and get integrated into the soil as nutrients. Tree roots stay close to these available nutrients and decomposers such as millipedes and earth worms use these nutrients for food. The understory is the layer above the forest floor. Much like the forest floor, only about 2 to 5 percent of the sunlight reaches this shadowy realm. Many of the plants in the understory have large, broad leaves to collect as much sunlight as possible. The understory is so thick that there is very little air movement. As a result, plants rely on insects and animals to pollinate their flowers. The layer above the understory is the canopy. This is where much of the action in the rainforest occurs. Many plants growing in this layer have specially adapted leaves with drip tips. Drip tips allow water to flow off the leaves and thus prevent mosses, fungi and lichens from infecting the leaves. Leaves in the canopy are very dense and filter about 80 percent of the sunlight. The canopy is where the wealth of the rainforest's fruits and flowers grow.

Questions :

1. Which is the world's second largest river?
2. How important is the Amazon River for Amazon rainforests?
3. Why do very few plants grow in the understory of the rainforests?
4. Why is there very little air movement in the understory?
5. What is the layer above the understory called?

Passage VII

Although not the longest river in America, the Rio Grande is one of the most important. But, unlike other significant rivers, it is not used for shipping. In fact, oceangoing ships cannot navigate the waters. No, what makes the Rio Grande so important is its location. Since 1846, it has been the official border of Texas and Mexico. The Rio Grande is either the fourth or fifth longest river system in North America. It all depends on how it is measured. Because the river twists so much, it occasionally changes course. And these course shifts can cause it to be longer or shorter. At its last official measure, the Rio Grande clocked in at 1,896 miles. The river starts in Colorado and extends downward to the Gulf of Mexico. Downward is the best way of describing it too. Not only does the river extend south, but it also starts in the mountains and gets lower and lower in elevation as it extends to the Gulf. Its name is Spanish for the "Big River," but the Rio Grande is actually known as Rio Bravo in Mexico. "Bravo" translates as "**furious**," so the name makes sense. Because of its twists and turns, it certainly does seem to be angrier than most rivers! The Rio Grande today is mostly used as a source of drinking water. Sadly, much of the water has been drained from the river. Parts of the river are almost dry! This is because people use more water from the river than the river can get back from rain and other sources. Experts are working to correct this, though, with hopes of restoring the river to its past strength. Today, the river is important as a source of water for Texans and Mexicans. More important, it is a symbol of cooperation between two nations. Though borders like the Rio Grande separate nations, they are also shared spaces. The Rio Grande is therefore a symbol of friendship and peace between two peoples.

Questions :

1. Why is Rio Grande so important?
2. The author most likely writes that “downward” is the best way of describing it too” to
 - a) prove that the Rio Grande’s water levels have gone down recently
 - b) argue that the Rio Grande has changed shape over the years
 - c) highlight the fact that the Rio Grande flows south and from high elevations
 - d) explain why the Rio Grande is known as the Rio Bravo down in Mexico.
3. The word ‘furious’ most nearly means _____.
 - a) angry
 - b) large
 - c) twisted
 - d) dry
4. Where does the Rio Grande have the endpoints?
5. Why do we call the Rio Grande a symbol of friendship?

Passage VIII

It is breakfast time. You have been looking forward to eating a nice ripe banana ever since you woke up. Just when you reach for the delicious piece of fruit on your counter, you see something that makes you much less hungry: a swarm of fruit flies! Fruit flies are tiny insects that are attracted to ripe or rotting fruits and vegetables. The flies not only eat the fruit, they also lay their eggs there. A single fruit fly can lay up to 500 eggs on the surface of a piece of fruit. Within eight days, the fruit flies that hatch from these eggs are full adults that can then lay their own eggs. As you can see, what might start out as a small fruit fly problem can become very large very quickly. Although there is a chance fruit flies can carry germs on to your food, this is not very likely. Fruit flies are annoying, but they probably will not hurt you. Because they are such a nuisance, however, most people want to get rid of these pesky bugs as quickly as possible. Some people use pesticide sprays on the fruit flies. Although this will kill the flies, it will also spread harmful poison all over your kitchen. Luckily, there is also a completely safe way for you to get rid of fruit flies in your house. The first step is for you to remove all fruits or vegetables from your counter. Store these items in the refrigerator or in sealed containers. Clean up any spilled juice or bits of food that might be on the floor. Take out the trash and empty the recycling bin. Wash any dirty dishes that are in your sink. Doing all of these things will stop new fruit flies from finding food or places to lay their eggs.

Questions:

1. Why does the hunger become less?
2. What are the fruit flies?
3. Fruit flies do not harm us. True or False
4. What do some people use to kill fruit flies?
5. What is the safe way of getting rid of the fruit flies?

Passage IX

In the freezing ocean waters of Antarctica, the planet’s largest seals make their home in a frozen world. These giants are southern elephant seals, and they can grow as long as the length of a car and weigh as much as two cars combined. The name “elephant seal” comes from both the males’ enormous size and from their giant trunk-like nose, called a proboscis. Females do not have a proboscis and they are much smaller. A thick layer of blubber keeps southern elephant seals warm in their icy habitat. The seals are clumsy on land, but in water they’re graceful swimmers and incredible divers. They can easily dive 1,000 to 4,000 feet to hunt for squid, octopus, and permanent injury is

rare. Females arriving on land give birth to a single pup they've been carrying since the previous year. Newborns weigh about 90 pounds. The mother nurses her pup for a little over three weeks. After this, she breeds with a dominant male and then returns to the sea to feed. Her pup now weighs well over 200 pounds and is on its own. If it survives, it too will enter the sea within a couple of months. A second reason elephant seals come to land is to molt. When they molt, they shed old skin and fur and new skin and fur grows. A smaller species, the northern elephant seal, lives in the Pacific Ocean, dispersed from Baja, California to Alaska. Both northern and southern elephant seals were once hunted nearly to extinction. However, under legal protections both have made incredible comebacks.

Questions:

1. How are elephant seal's movements different on land from water?
2. Why do male elephant seals arrive on land before females during the breeding season?
3. How does an elephant seal obtain its food?
4. Are elephant seals in danger of becoming extinct today? Why or why not?
5. The northern seal lives in _____.

Passage X

I'm sure you all know how important recycling is. Recycling is when you take old things and turn them into new things. It sounds like magic. But it's actually very scientific. Do you know how it all works? The first thing you have to do is collect items that can be recycled. Only certain materials can be recycled. These include things made out of paper, metal, glass and plastic. Can you think of everyday items made out of these materials? Soda cans are a good example. They are made out of metal. Magazines and newspapers are made out of paper. So are cereal boxes. Some bottles of juice are made out of glass. Bags and yogurt containers are made out of plastic. There are many things that can be recycled. These things are usually stamped with the recycling loop. It has 3 arrows that go in a triangular circle. This shows that the cycle continues. Items are thrown away but continue their lives as something else. Let's get back to the process of recycling. Once you put all your items in a recycling bin, a truck comes to pick them up. Everything goes to a recycling plant. There, the materials get separated. They go into different piles. There are special machines that crush each pile together. The materials get squashed into square cubes. They are really heavy. You would need a forklift to carry them. Companies buy these cubes and turn them into new products. Now let's take a closer look at how old paper is transformed. First the paper is torn into tiny pieces. Then a special water with chemicals is poured onto it. The fibers start to stick together. In time, a brand new roll of paper is created! If there were things written or printed on the first paper, they disappear. Recycling keeps our planet healthy. It reduces waste. It also saves energy. You can do your part. So just remember the golden rule: always recycle your products!

Questions:

1. What is recycling?
2. What items can be recycled?
3. Recycling is actually _____.
4. How do the fibers in papers stick together?
5. How does recycling help the planet?

PART - IV**13. POEM COMPREHENSION****Marks : 5****Exercise with Answer****Read the poem and answer the following questions.****Model 1**

*It you can't be a pine on the top of the hill,
Be a scrub in the valley – but be
The best little scrub by the side of the rill;
Be a bush, if you can't be a tree.*

*If you can't be a bush, be a bit of the grass,
And some highway happier make;
If you can't be a muskie, then just be a bass-
But the liveliest bass in the lake!*

*We can't all be captains, we've got to be crew,
There's something for all of us here.
There's big work to do and there's lesser to do
And the task we must do is the near.*

*If you can't be a highway, then just be a trail,
If you can't be the sun, be a star;
It isn't by size that you win or you fail-
Be the best of whatever you are!*

Questions

1. **When should you try to be a scrub in the valley?**

If you fail to be a pine on the top of the hill you can be at least a scrub in the valley.

2. **What can the grass do to people?**

The grass can give happiness to the people who are walking in the highway.

3. **What is muskie?**

Muskie is a type of fish.

4. **If you cannot be a captain what can you try to be?**

If you cannot be a captain you can try to be a member of the crew.

5. **What does the poet say in the last line?**

The poet says that wherever we are whatever we are we should be the best of that.

Self - Evaluation**Read the poem and answer the following questions.****1. My dear Soldiers**

*Oh! Defenders of borders
You are great sons of my land
When we are all asleep
You still hold on to your deed
Windy season or snowy days
Or scorching sun's sweltering rays
You are there guarding all the time awake
Treading the lonely expanses as yogis*

*Climbing the heights or striding the valleys
Defending the deserts or guarding the marshes
Surveillance in seas and by securing the air
Prime of your youth given to the nation!!
Wind chimes of my land vibrate your feat
We pray for you brave men!!
May the Lord bless you all!!*

Questions

1. Who are the defenders of our borders?
2. What are the difficult times mentioned in the poem?
3. What is the meaning of 'scorching'?
4. How do they guard us?
5. Whom should God bless?

2.

<i>Whenever I see Gas Balloons go up</i>	<i>Like human beings – so differently from each other</i>
<i>I wonder where we'd end up</i>	<i>In colours, shapes, design and sizes</i>
<i>If we'r balloons would go far away</i>	<i>Some lives long and some don't</i>
<i>To some unknown destiny?</i>	<i>Just like us some find a pair of loving hands and some don't</i>
<i>Or will it be carefully decided goal</i>	<i>They got lost, burst or destroyed</i>
<i>We would work our way to?</i>	<i>Like we do at times they rub cheeks affectionately</i>
<i>Or will it be carefully decided goal</i>	<i>Occasionally you can hear them whisper secrets</i>
<i>We would work our way to?</i>	<i>As only friend will and once in a while, in the chill</i>
<i>Balloons! How much they're</i>	<i>Of the night or the mist of dawn you may find one tear</i>
	<i>Following down silently</i>

Questions

1. What does the poet think when he sees the balloons go up?
2. If we are balloons where would we go?
3. Explain the comparison in the second stanza.
4. What do we do with affection?
5. How will we hear the secrets?

3. TWIN TOWER

<i>I was built of steel, I was built of stone,</i>	<i>All races, creeds, and religions were,</i>
<i>I was built by men of flesh and bone.</i>	<i>Under my roof all equal without a slur.</i>
<i>They built me strong they built me tall,</i>	<i>But things are not always as simple as they seem,</i>
<i>A symbol of strength for one and all.</i>	<i>For sometimes men, can be obscene.</i>
<i>And from my ramparts you could see,</i>	<i>Then one fine day when the sun shone strong,</i>
<i>The city of modernity.</i>	<i>Something came that did not belong.</i>
<i>Thousands came and gazed in awe,</i>	<i>Some men of flesh and blood and bone,</i>
<i>All marveled at what they saw.</i>	<i>Sent planes with fuel and speed alone.</i>
<i>Commerce was my bailiwick,</i>	<i>They hit me once, they hit me twice,</i>
<i>I helped the world when it was sick.</i>	<i>Fires burned and I was filled with strife.</i>
<i>My congregations came from afar,</i>	<i>I tried to stand I tried to mend,</i>
<i>They made their fortunes and were my star.</i>	<i>But it all was futile in the end.</i>
	<i>I once was strong I once was tall,</i>
	<i>Till one day I became nothing at all</i>

Questions

1. Whom does 'I' refer to?
2. How is the structure built?
3. Why did thousands of people go there?
4. What was the main work done there?
5. How was the structure hit?

4. SYMPATHY

I know what the caged bird feels, alas!

*When the sun is bright on the upland slopes;
When the wind stirs soft through the springing grass,
And the river flows like a stream of glass;*

*When the first bird sings and the first bud opes,
And the faint perfume from its chalice steals—
I know what the caged bird feels!*

*I know why the caged bird beats his wing
Till its blood is red on the cruel bars;
For he must fly back to his perch and cling
When he fain would be on the bough a-swing;
And a pain still throbs in the old, old scars
And they pulse again with a keener sting—
I know why he beats his wing!*

*I know why the caged bird sings, ah me,
When his wing is bruised and his bosom sore,—
When he beats his bars and he would be free;
It is not a carol of joy or glee,
But a prayer that he sends from his heart's deep core,
But a plea, that upward to Heaven he flings—
I know why the caged bird sings!*

Questions

1. What are the situations brought out by the poet in the first stanza?
2. Why does the poet feel sympathy for the bird?
3. Why does the bird beat his wings?
4. When does the bird sing?
5. What is the purpose of his singing?

GOVT. QUESTION PAPER - MARCH 2020

CLASS: XII ENGLISH

Time allowed: 15min+3hours

Maximum Marks: 90

- Instructions :
1. Check the question paper for fairness of printing. If there is any lack of fairness, inform the hall supervisor immediately.
 2. Use Blue or Black ink to write and underline and pencil to draw diagrams.

PART - I

Answer all the questions.

20×1=20

Choose the most appropriate answer from the given four alternatives and write the option code and the corresponding answer.

Choose the most appropriate synonyms of the underlined words in the following sentences.

1. that they only drink it in order to be warmed and stimulated.
a) admired b) motivated c) comforted d) welcomed
2. It was a great thrill to look straight down this enormous rock face.
a) huge b) rough c) steep d) lofty
3. the end of such liberty would be universal chaos .
a) mystery b) destruction c) confusion d) harmony

Choose the most appropriate antonyms of the underlined words in the following sentences.

4. One night, we came upon them in the windy and deserted square.
a) crowded b) secured c) fertile d) desolate
5. Suffering seems so cruelly prevalent in the world today.
a) unbelievable b) unavoidable c) unfair d) uncommon
6. It seemed vital to her that they do so
a) jovial b) social c) trivial d) partial
7. Choose the correct singular form of “**Bacteria**”.
a) Bacterian b) Bacteri c) Bacteriae d) Bacterium
8. Choose the suitable meaning for the **idiom** found in the following sentence.
Eleventh hour preparation will not help the students.
a) till 11 p.m. b) at the last moment c) much in advance d) late at night
9. Fill in the blank with the most suitable **Preposition**.
The tea should be put straight _____ the pot.
a) over b) on c) into d) in
10. Choose the correct American English word for “**queue**”.
a) straight b) level c) line d) order
11. Choose the correct expansion of the acronym “**TOEFL**”.
a) Testing of Energy, Fuel and Liquid b) Test of Engineering for Fundamental Learners
c) Testing of Education for Foreign Learners d) Test of English as a Foreign Language

12. Choose the correct **question tag** for the following statement.
The story tries to relate history to science, _____?
a) is it b) isn't it c) does it d) doesn't it
13. Identify the **sentence pattern** for the following sentence.
The birds are flying gracefully in the sky.
a) SVOA b) SVAA c) SVOC d) SVCA
14. Fill in the blank with a suitable **relative pronoun** for the following sentence.
Ram _____ house we live in, is an engineer.
a) whom b) which c) who d) whose
15. Form a new word by adding suitable **prefix** to the underlined word.
It is rather an expensive compliment.
a) non- b) un- c) in- d) dis-
16. Choose the **disyllabic** word.
a) benefit b) again c) weight d) strength
17. Choose the clipped form of "**Perambulator**".
a) pram b) peram c) ramtor d) rambul
18. Choose the right meaning of the idiom '**a bolt out of a clear sky**' from the options given.
a) a much-awaited information b) a deafening noise of bomb blast
c) a flash of bright lightning d) a sudden unexpected event
19. One who represents the government of his country in a foreign country is a/an _____.
a) envoy b) martyr c) ambassador d) patriot
20. Replace the underlined word with a suitable phrasal verb.
The fire was extinguished by the fire brigade.
a) put off b) put on c) put out d) put in

PART - II

SECTION - 1

Read the following sets of poetic lines and answer any four sets.

4×2=8

21. "A Gray baboon sits statue - like alone"
a) Where did the baboon sit? b) Mention the figure of speech employed here.
22. "..... Free imaginations
Bringing changes into a world resenting change."
a) How does free imagination help the world? b) Identify the figure of speech.
23. "Our gates were strong, our walls were thick,
So smooth and high, no man could win."
a) How safe was the castle? b) What was the firm belief of the soldiers?
24. "Legs wide, arms locked behind,
As if no balance the prone brow
Oppressive with its mind"
a) What is meant by 'prone brow'? b) Pick out the words in alliteration.
25. "This is my son, mine own Telemachus
To whom I leave the sceptre and the isle
Well loved of me."

- a) Who does Ulysses entrust his Kingdom to, in his absence?
 b) Bring out the significance of the sceptre.
26. *"All the world's a stage
 And all the men and women merely players."*
 a) What is the world compared to?
 b) Identify the figure of speech employed in the first line.

SECTION - 2**Do as directed.****Answer any three questions.****3×2=6**

27. Change the direct speech into Reported form.
 Vidhya said to Kanya, "Would you like to come to the party with us tomorrow?"
28. Change into other voice form.
 I shall have completed my project next week.
29. If I had come earlier, I would have attended the interview. (Begin with 'Had').
30. Smitha carried out the survey and presented her report. (Rewrite as a simple sentence).

PART - III**SECTION - 1****Explain any two of the following with reference to the context.****2×3=6**

31. *"LIKE a huge Python, winding round and round
 The rugged trunk, indented deep with scars."*
32. *"... I am become a name ;
 For always roaming with a hungry heart."*
33. *"I'm Killed, Sire" And, his chief beside,
 Smiling, the boy fell dead.*

SECTION - 2**Answer any two of the following questions in not more than 30 words.****2×3=6**

34. What were the various jobs undertaken by Nicola and Jacopo?
35. How did the boy who played the mechanic lose his eyesight ?
36. How would liberty cause universal chaos ?

SECTION - 3**Answer any three of the following.****3×3=9**

37. Study the following table, and write three sentences on your inference about the data.

Average Annual rainfall in the Southern States of India in the year 2012

S.No.	States of India	Average rainfall in mm
1.	Tamil Nadu & Pondicherry	1996
2.	Andhra Pradesh	3580
3.	Karnataka	5160
4.	Kerala	3055

38. Write any three precautions to be taken at home, before a cyclone hit.

39. Build a dialogue between a beggar and a social reformer with a minimum of 3 exchanges.
40. **Rearrange the following jumbled proverbs correctly.**
- a road / never / a turning / without / there is
 - the last straw / broke the / it was / that / camel's back
 - the child / and / spare / spoil / the rod

PART - IV

Answer the following.

7×5=35

41. **Answer any one of the following in a paragraph of about 150 words.**
- Summarise George Orwell's distinctive ideas in "A Nice Cup of Tea".
 - How did Hillary and Tenzing prepare themselves before they set off to the summit?
42. **Answer any one of the following in a paragraph of about 150 words.**
- 'Human greed led to the mighty fall of the citadel'-Explain.
 - The young soldier matched Napoleon in courage and patriotism. Elucidate your answer.
43. **Answer any one of the following in a paragraph of about 150 words by developing the hints.**
- Robert Baldwin an honest man - fraud in a bank - Gresham arrested - pressurised Baldwin - to falsely declare - offered huge bribe - Baldwin refused - family members tempted - ashamed of greed - stood for justice - Gresham confessed - Baldwin confessed - Baldwin rewarded.
 - Life on Venus - other planet - raining for seven years - school children - nine years old - forgotten the sun - appeared once in 7 years - Margot from Earth - came five years before - children hated her - locked her in a room - sun came - only for two hours - rained again - unlocked the door - let Margot out - missed the chance.
44. a) **Either Make Notes or summarize the following passage.**

Soybeans belong to the legume family. The beans are the seeds of the leguminous soybean plant. They can be grown on a variety of soil and in a wide range of climates. Soybean are versatile as they can be used as whole beans, soy sprouts or processed as a variety of food items, such as soy milk, tofu, soy sauce, soy oil and soy dairy alternatives. They are also used for making candles and bio-diesel.

Soy is an excellent source of high quality protein; is low in saturated fats and is cholesterol free. It is also rich in vitamins, calcium, iron, potassium and copper. In recent times it has been highly recommended because of its ability to lower the levels of Low Density Lipoprotein (LDL), A Bad cholesterol.

The Food and Drug Administration (FDA) Has confirmed that foods containing soy protein are likely to reduce the risk of coronary heart disease.

An easy way to take soy is as soymilk now available with added flavour. Soymilk does not contain lactose (milk sugar) and can be drunk by those who are allergic to normal milk. To get soymilk, soybeans are soaked in water, ground and then strained. If you don't mind the trouble, you can also make it at home.

(OR)

- Write a paragraph of about 150 words on the hazards of using mobile phone.
45. a) Recently, you ordered for a watch through online shopping, and when it arrived, it was damaged. Write a Letter to the company that sold you the watch.
- give details about the order you made.
 - explain what was wrong with the watch.
 - tell the company, what do you want them to do about it.

(OR)

b) Write a letter to your friend sharing your travel experience to Delhi.

46. a) **Read the following sentences, spot the errors and correct them.**

- i) It will be a waste throwing the food away.
- ii) Kailesh never does any work behind 10 p.m.
- iii) Neither Suresh nor Kamalesh are intelligent.
- iv) Nithya has taken half day leave.
- v) One of my uncle lives in Canada.

(OR)

a) **Fill in the blanks appropriately.**

- i) Usha _____ (buy) a laptop recently. She _____ (use) it at the moment.
(use the verb in the correct form)
- ii) My sister _____ dance so well, when she was in school. (use a semi modal verb)
- iii) The bugle is _____ in our school _____. (band / banned)

47. a) **Develop the hints into a story of 150 words.**

Once a bee - fell into a pond - pigeon flew past - dropped a leaf - bee climbed on leaf - escaped - a hunter - aimed at pigeon - the bee stung - lost his aim - pigeon escaped.

(OR)

b) **Read the following passage and answer the questions given below.**

“The Little Tramp”, the unforgettable character Charlie Chaplin invented, was born purely by accident in 1915. While rushing to a film shoot in California, he grabbed clothes what other people had left behind in the changing room. And when he emerged, he found, he had created a personality everybody loved a little guy in a bowler hat, a close - fitting jacket, a cane, a pair of outsized shoes and a brush - like mustache.

Before long, Chaplin found himself a star. That puzzled him, for he saw himself essentially as a shy British Music Hall Comedian. The U.S., acknowledged him as its king of silent film comedy. Soon, so did crowds all over the world.

But life wasn't always a laugh for Charles Spencer Chaplin. Both his parents were Music Hall artists, who separated when Charlie was very young. His childhood was very sad, for his mother never earned enough to look after her children. Sometimes, Chaplin had to sleep on the streets.

Charlie took his first bow on the stage, when his mother made her last appearance. It happened when her voice broke during a song. Her son stepped on stage and sang a popular song. That's when a star was born.

Questions:

- i) Which unforgettable character did Charlie Chaplin invent?
- ii) Describe the personality created by Charlie, whom everybody loved.
- iii) What did Charlie see himself as?
- iv) Give one reason to show that Charlie's early life was very sad.
- v) Find the word in the passage that is opposite in meaning to
(i) “bold” and (ii) “tragedy”



www.Padasalai.Net

படங்களை தொடுக! பாடசாலை வலைதளத்தை சமூக ஊடகங்களில் பின்தொடர்க!! உடனுக்குடன் புதிய செய்திகளை Notifications-ல் பெறுக!



YouTube



Zoom



Touch Below Links



Download!

12th Standard	Syllabus	Books	Study Materials – EM	Study Materials - TM	Practical	Online Test (EM & TM)
	Monthly Q&A	Mid Term Q&A	Revision Q&A	PTA Book Q&A	Centum Questions	Creative Questions
	Quarterly Exam	Half Yearly Exam	Public Exam	NEET		

11th Standard	Syllabus	Books	Study Materials – EM	Study Materials - TM	Practical	Online Test (EM & TM)
	Monthly Q&A	Mid Term Q&A	Revision Q&A	Centum Questions	Creative Questions	
	Quarterly Exam	Half Yearly Exam	Public Exam	NEET		

10th Standard	Syllabus	Books	Study Materials - EM	Study Materials - TM	Practical	Online Test (EM & TM)
	Monthly Q&A	Mid Term Q&A	Revision Q&A	PTA Book Q&A	Centum Questions	Creative Questions
	Quarterly Exam	Half Yearly Exam	Public Exam	NTSE	SLAS	

9th Standard	Syllabus	Books	Study Materials	1st Mid Term	2nd Mid Term	3rd Mid Term
	Quarterly Exam	Half Yearly Exam	Annual Exam	RTE		

8th Standard	Syllabus	Books	Study Materials	1st Mid Term	2nd Mid Term	3rd Mid Term
	Term 1	Term 2	Term 3	Public Model Q&A	NMMS	Periodical Test

7th Standard	Syllabus	Books	Study Materials	1st Mid Term	2nd Mid Term	3rd Mid Term
	Term 1	Term 2	Term 3	Periodical Test	SLAS	

6th Standard	Syllabus	Books	Study Materials	1st Mid Term	2nd Mid Term	3rd Mid Term
	Term 1	Term 2	Term 3	Periodical Test	SLAS	

1st to 5th Standard	Syllabus	Books	Study Materials	Periodical Test	SLAS	
	Term 1	Term 2	Term 3	Public Model Q&A		

Exams	TET	TNPSC	PGTRB	Polytechnic	Police	Computer Instructor
	DEO	BEO	LAB Asst	NMMS	RTE	NTSE

Portal	Matrimony	Mutual Transfer	Job Portal
---------------	---------------------------	---------------------------------	----------------------------

Volunteers	Centum Team	Creative Team	Key Answer Team
-------------------	-----------------------------	-------------------------------	---------------------------------

Downloads	LESSON PLAN	Department Exam	Income Tax	Forms & Proposals	Fonts	Downloads
	Proceedings	GO's	Regulation Orders	Pay Orders	Panel	



Padasalai – Official Android App – [Download Here](#)



Kindly Send Your Study Materials, Q&A to our Email ID – Padasalai.net@gmail.com